

33383/A

Vol 3



*Thomas. Newman. Frederick. Bardwell.*

LE VAILLANT. FRANÇOIS





Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2016 with funding from  
Wellcome Library

<https://archive.org/details/b28771291>







*Selection of the most interesting parts of the original MS. of the Voyage de M. de la Caillie, 23*

NEW  
TRAVELS

INTO THE  
INTERIOR PARTS

*H. D. de la Caillie*  
*Cote d'Ivoire*

OF  
AFRICA,

BY THE WAY OF  
THE CAPE OF GOOD HOPE,

IN THE YEARS 1783, 84 AND 85.

TRANSLATED FROM THE FRENCH OF LE VAILLANT.

ILLUSTRATED WITH A MAP, DELINEATING THE ROUTE OF  
HIS PRESENT AND FORMER TRAVELS, AND WITH  
TWENTY-TWO OTHER COPPER-PLATES.

IN THREE VOLUMES.

---

V O L. III.

---

L O N D O N :

PRINTED FOR G. G. AND J. ROBINSON,  
PATERNOSTER-ROW.

1796.



---

TRAVELS  
INTO THE  
INTERIOR PARTS  
OF  
AFRICA.

---

COUNTRY OF THE GREATER AND LESS  
NIMIQUEAS.

HAVING fixed the 6th of January for my departure, the chief of the Nimiqua horde, near which I was encamped, came on the day appointed, with his wife and sister, to take leave of me. His sister had a pretty little monkey, the belly of which was white, and the rest of the body of a greenish colour. This charming animal was the first of its species I had

VOL. III.                      B                      seen;



seen; and I wished much to have it in my possession to add to my collection; but it was so dear to its mistress, that I durst not venture to ask it of her. Every time she came to visit me, she brought it along with her; and, before she entered my tent, she tied it to one of the stakes, that it might play with Kees. I was always fond of treating it with some dainty; but scarcely would my back be turned, when Kees, stronger and more mischievous, would open its mouth by force, and take from its pouches what I had given it. Its mistress, highly delighted with this trick, would laugh most immoderately. She would then run to her favourite, load him with caresses, as if to console him, and request me to make him amends by some other present; while Kees, afraid of being forced to restore what he had robbed, would save himself by flight.

The attachment which this woman had to her monkey was a real passion. Her whole happiness seemed to be centred in it. A hundred times, while we were talking together, would she interrupt the conversation to kiss it; and yet when she saw me about to depart, to my great surprise, she snatched it up suddenly, and

and, having kissed it over and over with the utmost tenderness, threw it upon my shoulder and bid me keep it. Was this inconstancy or indifference? The caresses she bestowed upon it before she gave it me prove that it was neither. She conjectured, that it would afford me great pleasure to possess the animal; and, without farther ceremony, she detached herself from it in my favour.

My plan was to repair to a horde of the Koraquas, established at the distance of fourteen or fifteen leagues farther to the north-east. Twelve persons, men and women, of that which I was going to leave, joined themselves to my caravan, and served me as guides. We proposed to halt on the banks of a river, situated four leagues and a half from our point of departure; but we found the bed of it occupied by a herd of more than an hundred buffaloes, which my dogs roused, and which fled from us on the opposite side.

It is always a bad omen to meet with these animals, in the deserts, during times of drought; for, as they live always in large herds, and take up their abode in the beds of the rivers, they soon exhaust what little water

might otherwise be left in them. In this, therefore, we did not find a single drop.

After we had rested, we resumed our march, following their track, both with a view that they might not exhaust the other reservoirs, which we knew we should soon stand in need of, and that we might, if possible, kill some of them. Towards evening we came up with them, at the distance of five leagues farther on the banks of the river; and as the bushes with which the country was covered retarded their progress, and concealed us from their sight, we were able, by the assistance of our dogs, to approach them, and to kill two.

They were in nothing different from the other buffaloes which I had met with in the eastern part of Africa, except that they were of a monstrous size. In no part had I ever seen any equal to them.

Two animals of such a bulk ensured provisions in abundance for my whole company; but, as the cutting them up would require an entire day, I deferred that labour till the next morning. At break of day my people began their work; and, in the mean time, that I might conciliate the friendship of the Koraquas, whose

whose horde I intended to visit, I dispatched messengers to inform them that, if they chose to partake of my game, I would give them a share of it with the greatest pleasure.

In this manner, I here repeat it, must every traveller act who wishes to succeed in his plans. By such means he will procure friends; and he will find no savages, however ferocious, whom he may not render tractable.

I must declare, to the honour of the Africans, that the farther you go from the colonies you will find among them more sincerity and more affection. Those who, on account of their distance, are neither known to, nor have an opportunity of knowing the Europeans, possess a simplicity highly engaging, and show no mistrust but what is necessary to every reasonable being, to guard against danger and preserve his existence.

Their character, it is true, displays more apathy, and their talents are more confined; but never having occasion to deceive, and being also never exposed to be deceived by others, they have no need of falsehood, and are unacquainted with it.

The Koraquas arrived in the afternoon, to



the number of thirty men and women, and brought with them some oxen to carry back the provisions I had offered them. They passed the night with me; and, next morning, having caused their oxen to be loaded, I set out with them for their horde, across a scorched plain, the driest, perhaps, of all those I had yet traversed.

I every where observed giraffes; but, in a space so extensive, they had too much advantage over us; and, as I despaired of being able to get near them, I did not so much as think of pursuing them. Having, however, seen a rhinoceros, which, by the heaviness of his flight, seemed likely to lose ground, I resolved to hunt him, and set out accordingly with Klaas. We galloped forwards full speed, and had got within shot, when the horse on which Klaas was mounted, suddenly stumbling, fell down, and threw him over his head to the distance of more than ten feet. By the effects of the fall, his fusée went off at the same time; and it was only by the explosion that I was informed of the accident.

I was then at about the distance of a hundred and fifty yards in a straight line before him.

I hastened



I hastened towards him, as soon as I observed the accident, and, finding him motionless, imagined he was dead; but, on putting some volatile alkali to his nose, his senses returned; and, as he was now in a fair way of recovery, I left him to run after his horse; and having caught it we rejoined our caravan.

An accident, but of a different kind, had happened among the rest of my company. Two women, exhausted by fatigue and the heat, had been taken ill; and it was found necessary to place them upon the oxen which I kept for that purpose, and which followed us in relays.

Though we had advanced but a little way, my colonial Hottentots were already quite worn out. Accustomed to the temperate climate of the Cape, these men, naturally indolent and timid, were unable to support the scorching heat of the torrid zone to which we were approaching. Those who during my first journey had, when circumstances required, sustained marches of twelve hours, found themselves now so languid and weak after one of half the time, that they were not capable of advancing a step farther. They saw me ex-

pose myself to the same fatigue without complaining; but my example had no effect to raise their depressed courage.

They complained particularly of thirst more than of any other evil. In vain did I exhort them to employ a remedy I had discovered, which was that of not drinking much, and of being contented with lapping a little water at a time, like my dogs. This would have been sufficient to moisten the salivary glands, and to keep the mouth cool; but their obstinate ignorance would not suffer them to follow my directions. They drank to satisfy the present, and thought they could drink also to satisfy their future thirst, without perceiving that the large quantity of liquid which they swallowed, after remaining on their stomachs like a load, and retarding their movements, soon went off again in an abundant perspiration, which greatly weakened them, and threw them into a state of general relaxation, the cause of which they unjustly ascribed to the climate.

Besides, all the water here being for the most part brackish, it occasioned dysenteries, which they rendered continual, by refusing the only remedy we could employ to check them. They  
had

had already forgotten those protestations of zeal, and those solemn promises which they were so eager to make before my departure from Cape Orange ; and the symptoms of discontent which they began to show rendered me exceedingly unhappy.

To this cause of uneasiness was added another. On approaching the kraal, the remainder of the horde (those, I mean, who were not in my company) came to meet me, but in a tumultuous manner, and without a leader. Their chief had died a little before ; and, since that event, anarchy, disorder, and confusion had prevailed among them. They had assembled, indeed, to elect a successor to the deceased ; but, the person chosen having refused to accept the office, the horde had divided into two parties, one consisting of the men and the other of the women, each of whom had named a chief, so that they had three at once, none of whom, however, possessed sufficient authority to terminate their dissension. The result of this triple election was continual disputes and wrangling. Battles, in which much blood was shed, took place every day ; and these combats tended still more to increase their animosity.

Scarcely

Scarcely had they joined me, when they began to show, by their conduct, how their affairs were situated. The whole horde, both those who had arrived and those who had accompanied me, no longer paid attention to any thing but their quarrel; and they endeavoured to interest me in it, though I knew not a single word of their language. To see their warmth, one might have supposed that their election was a matter of importance to the whole world, and that the fate of mankind was about to depend on their chief. All spoke at the same time; each endeavoured to drown his neighbour's voice by his own; their eyes sparkled with fury; and, amidst this confusion, while they threatened each other in turns, the noise they made became truly dreadful.

This intestine war among the savages afforded me a spectacle entirely new; and though it had rather an alarming appearance, it presented something interesting to the observation of a traveller. The hope, indeed, which I entertained of settling their dispute in an equitable manner, made some amends for the disagreeableness of my situation by being constituted supreme judge in a cause of so much consequence.



consequence. I had great reason to entertain a high idea of myself, as I was going, by a single word, to be the founder or restorer of the greatest power that one mortal can exercise over others.

I learned by my interpreters, that the deceased had left several sons of sufficient age to succeed him ; and yet these sons had been entirely forgotten ; notwithstanding what Kolben tells of the wonderful order which prevails, as to succession, among the African tribes, and of the continuance of the crown in the reigning families. The course dictated to me by prudence, and the only one I could pursue under the present circumstances, was to watch the different events likely to result from this scene, and to take advantage of that which I might think most favourable to my views. A fortunate circumstance soon enabled me to carry my plan into execution.

Unarmed and without any precaution, though surrounded by this enraged multitude, I walked calmly along in the midst of them ; and, when we arrived at the kraal, I ordered my tent to be immediately formed, as if I had been surrounded by my friends and relations.

This



This appearance, raised suddenly, and as if by magic, before the eyes of the horde, with my fuses, horses, and tent, objects which were all new to them, filled them with admiration. Men, women, and children, motionless and with their mouths wide open, all stood looking at them with profound silence. Anger, hatred, and every violent passion, seemed by their countenances to be extinguished, and to have given place to more tranquil emotions, to ignorant surprise, and stupid astonishment. This state of calmness was just what I wished for; and my whole attention was employed in prolonging it, in order that I might turn it to advantage.

Infancy is naturally curious; it is struck with every thing it sees; and the savage, in this respect, is only a grown up child. As these savages seemed to wish that I would permit them to examine more closely whatever excited their admiration, I readily condescended to gratify their desire. They approached, surveyed, and handled every thing. But the principal object of general curiosity was my person. They seemed as if they would never be satisfied with looking at my dress. They

pulled off my hat, that they might the better examine my hair and my beard, which were long. They even half unbuttoned my clothes ; and surprised to see my skin white, each felt it, as if desirous to ascertain that what they saw was real.

This comedy continued till the evening ; and I did every thing in my power to prolong it. At length, when the moment of separation arrived, I caused to be hinted to the whole company, that if, two hours after sun-rise next morning, they should not be agreed respecting the choice of a chief, I would immediately leave them. I added, however, that if, on the other hand, they came and presented to me a chief, elected by general consent, I would then load them all with presents, and bestow on him a distinction, which would raise him above all his equals, and render the horde one of the most celebrated in the whole country. But what was my surprise when I learned the same evening, that on my head the burden of the crown was deposed ! Pretending to be alarmed at this intelligence, I took advantage of it, as I had intended, to restore perfect tranquillity ; and I accordingly acquiesced, assuring

assuring them, that if they would promise to be obedient, I would give them the only chief worthy of ruling them, and of making them happy.

By means of my interpreters, I had acquired every information necessary to enable me to accomplish my end with certainty. My principal aim was to learn the choice or inclination of the majority ; and I hoped, when it was known, to give to the object of it a consequence that should be capable of striking them. I succeeded according to my desire. They named one Haripa, and I immediately proclaimed him chief.

The savage has strong passions ; his anger is violent, but it is of short duration, and he soon returns to the natural mildness of his character. This I experienced on the present occasion. The commotion of the horde subsided ; and they peaceably retired, apparently disposed to obey me.

I was ignorant whether the women, when they separated, held any conference together, or whether my choice was agreeable to their wishes ; but, at the appointed hour next morning, the whole horde appeared before me, with

Haripa at their head. He was a man about forty years of age, tall, well made, exceedingly strong, and consequently formed by nature for ruling the feeble multitude.

Before I proceeded to install him, I desired to know whether they were all agreed in acknowledging him; or if any one objected to his election. Being assured that they were unanimous, I ordered Klaas to approach. Klaas immediately advanced, holding in his hand one of those grenadier caps given me by Colonel Gordon, and of which I have already spoken. He had brushed it with great care; and had polished the copperplate in the front, which was ornamented with the arms of Holland, that is to say, a lion rampant, having in one of his fore-paws seven arrows, and in the other a naked sabre.

This symbol could not fail to please these savages, as it exhibited a representation of the weapons peculiar to them, and of the most formidable animal of their country, which I took care to point out to them. They testified their admiration in the most expressive manner; and imagined that, superior to kings, I had by my almighty power made this work  
during



during the night, merely with a view to afford them pleasure.

After this preparation, I commanded silence ; and, causing the monarch to approach me, I placed the cap upon his head with great solemnity. I then affixed to the skin, which formed his dress, several rows of glass beads ; gave him a girdle made of a string of very large ones ; ornamented his arms with tin bracelets, and suspended from his neck a small padlock, shaped like a butterfly, the key of which I had lost. Such padlocks, made in the form of animals of every kind, are very common at the Cape. They come from China ; and are brought to Africa by the captains of the Company's ships which trade in the Indian seas.

During the ceremony of installation, the whole horde, dumb and motionless through admiration, seemed lost in ecstasy. Haripa himself, though highly gratified, did not dare to make the least movement, and observed a gravity altogether risible. When the inauguration was finished, and he was completely dressed, I presented him with a mirror, that he might enjoy the satisfaction of surveying his own figure. I then shewed him to the people,  
who



who expressed their joy by shouts and applauses without end.

Ye honest hearts, who peruse this account, behold what it cost me to restore peace among a whole tribe, and to prevent them from destroying each other! From this moment concord was re-established; universal joy prevailed throughout the horde; and they instantly began their dancings, which continued for three days and three nights without intermission. They killed for this festival several fat sheep, and even two oxen; an extraordinary and truly astonishing magnificence among a people, who, when they barter one of their daughters for a cow, think they have made an excellent bargain.

If the Koraquas set such a high value on their horned cattle, it is because they are the principal part of their riches. They do not, however, make them an object of trade. Being too far distant from the colonies to have any commercial intercourse with them, either directly or indirectly, they can traffic with their cattle only among themselves or their neighbours.

When I wished, therefore, to purchase a

sufficient number for my waggons, to supply the place of those I had lost, I procured them at a price which made me even ashamed. An ox cost me only a small bit of iron or a nail; and those who had the good fortune to make such an exchange were highly satisfied with their bargain.

I am fully convinced that, had I been desirous to tempt them, by exposing to their view certain trinkets, I might have got, without exception, every thing that belonged to the horde. This reminds me of the Indians I had seen at Surinam, who, forgetting in the morning that they must repose at night, will sell their hammock for the end of a lighted wax-candle. These people would not give the smallest article for a hundred weight of wax-candles in packets; but they are seduced by the splendour of one that is lighted. They are children who, to obtain any trifle that gives them pleasure for the moment, will offer and readily resign whatever they possess.

It is often from the same childish spirit that the savage is so ready to pilfer, and appropriate to his own use whatever he finds pleasing or suited to his purposes. The Koraquas at-  
tempted

tempted to carry away some of my effects, even before my face ; and to prevent their rapacity, I was obliged either to watch over, or to deposit them, in some place of safety, where they could no longer afford temptation.

These people are tall, and consequently of greater stature than the Hottentots of the colonies. My Hottentots, for instance, reached only to their shoulders ; but, notwithstanding this difference of size, and that of their cheeks which are less prominent, and though their skins are blacker, I believe them to be descended from the same race. At any rate they have the same language and customs as the Nimiquas their neighbours, who are certainly of Hottentot extraction.

Their dress also is the same in form as that of the Nimiquas, though it differs in the substance, being composed of the skin of the hyæna, and particularly of that of the jackal, an animal found in great abundance in those barren regions. With regard to the skins of the buffaloe and the giraffe, as they are too thick to be used for dresses, they employ them only to cover their huts.

As the excessive dryness of the country

renders springs very rare, the Koraquas would be unable to inhabit it, had they not found the means of remedying this scarcity of water. For this purpose, they dig in the earth a kind of cisterns or rather wells, to which they descend gradually by steps; and these people are the only African nation among whom I ever found the same mark of industry.

As their wells always contain little water, and as none is to be lost, they take care to secure it even from the birds, by closing up the mouth of the hole with stones and the branches of trees; so that, unless one knows the spot, it is impossible to find it. They go down into it every day, to fetch up as much water as may be necessary for the consumption of their people and cattle. They draw it in a kind of vessels made of a piece of hollowed wood, and pour it into the skins of buffaloes or giraffes, placed in a concave form on the ground to hold it; but they distribute it with the utmost parsimony, and never draw more than they absolutely have occasion for.

Notwithstanding this strict economy, the wells often become dry, and in that case the horde is obliged to remove to some other place.



Among all the western tribes, therefore, there are none who lead so wandering a life as the Koraquas : the consequence of which is, that, as they often change their abode, and acquire new neighbours, they must, in some measure, adopt the customs of the nations near which they fix their residence. Some tribes of them grease themselves like the Hottentots ; while others tattoo their face, breast, and arms, after the manner of the Caffres. It is, however, to be remarked, that the same colour is not employed by all the Koraquas. Each has his own, according as caprice may direct him in his choice, and it generally varies every day ; which renders, as one may say, the inhabitants of the same horde strangers to each other, and gives them a motley appearance, as if they were dressed for a masquerade.

After the accident of my wound in the horde of Klaas Baster, by a prickly geranium, I always took care, when I encamped in a new spot, to cause all those I could find around me to be torn up. Among those which we had occasion to destroy, near Haripa's kraal, I found a most superb one, with three long prickles, a figure of which shall be given,



when I publish an account of the new plants I collected in the course of my travels.

I found also, in the same neighbourhood, two new species of euphorbia, engravings of which are annexed. The first, which I call the melon-ribbed euphorbia, does not rise more than three or four inches from the ground, to which it adheres by a collection of fibrous roots, issuing from several tubercles disposed in the manner of a crown. The stem forms a flattened globe excavated at the summit, and has ribs like the apple which we call in France *calville blanche*. These ribs are elevated, thick, and convex, have a greenish colour, and are marked with brown transversal bands. From the summit of the ribs issue several little tufts of pedunculate flowers.

I gave the name of the caterpillar-euphorbia to the second, because, when I first found it, I thought I saw on it several beautiful hairy caterpillars. The description of it in a few words is as follows: From a very large tuberous root, which here and there throws out a few thready fibres, issue several stalks almost of the length of the finger: they creep along the ground, are twisted, woody, destitute of leaves, and



MELON-RIBBED-EUPHORBIA.





CATERPILLAR-EUPHORBIA.





and furnished with several rows of round tubercles, each guarded by two prickles.

Both these kinds of euphorbuim are to be dreaded; because, being low and mixed with the herbage like mushrooms, animals, as they feed, run the risk of eating them with their pasture.

Though this part of the country is dry and barren, it affords an abundant variety of plants, from which an expert botanist might have derived more benefit than I did. I, however, made a great number of drawings of the most remarkable objects; engravings from which I intend to publish hereafter.

During my residence with this horde, I observed large flocks of cranes and paroquets pass regularly over our heads every day, from north-west to south-east. The latter appeared to me to be proceeding towards Caffraria; and they were perhaps of the species I had seen in that country. I distinguished them by the continual chattering which they made during their flight, and by their manner of flying in pairs, male and female; but they were at so great a height that I could not kill any of them; and this was the case with all the birds of pas-

sage I had an opportunity of seeing. As the country had nothing to induce them to descend, none of them stopped. My hunting excursions, therefore, were become tiresome; and my collections did not increase so much as I wished.

With regard to the animals that were to supply the considerable consumption made daily by my company, I could depend neither on giraffes, buffaloes, nor the rhinoceros, which, being too wild, could not be approached. My whole resource, therefore, was in the antelopes; but, though I had in no part seen so many, and though they wandered here in immense flocks, I found it very difficult to get near them.

While under this embarrassment, Haripa, who thought himself much indebted to me for the presents I had given him, and who from gratitude and attachment accompanied me every where, promised, if I would follow his advice, and hunt after the Koraqua manner, to afford me an opportunity of killing, without quitting the spot, more game than would be sufficient for all my company during a whole moon. This extraordinary promise appeared to  
me

me exaggeration ; but, as it was easy for me to ascertain the truth of it, and as it afforded me the hopes of learning something, perhaps, that I did not know, I consented to make a trial.

Next morning, as soon as it was day, the chief sent out fifty men to track on the hills and eminences situated on the south side of the horde. About noon, one of them returned to give notice, that they had driven several flocks of antelopes together ; that they now formed an immense body, moving towards the plain ; and that they would not fail soon to make their appearance.

I immediately set out with Haripa, who posted me in a defile of the plain, through which, as he conjectured from the direction pursued by the trackers, the antelopes must necessarily pass ; and indeed we had not long remained in this position when we saw, rising from the sides of the hills, clouds of dust, which seemed every moment to extend themselves and to become larger. He then desired me to lie down on my belly, with my face towards the ground ; and in this posture, which appeared to me very little proper for hunting, I waited the event in silence.

The antelopes advanced full speed, and did  
not

not fail to direct their course towards us, as he had foreseen. As the situation we had taken did not permit them to see us, they were not startled, but proceeded forwards without altering their direction ; when about two thousand of them, however, had passed us, he rose up, began to discharge his arrows, and desired me to fire at the same time.

I was fully sensible that, when the herd was once put in motion, the antelopes in the rear would follow the rest ; and that, during the impression of their fear which made them fly, and throw themselves in crowds towards us, they would not be able to perceive us. I saw also that the savages, by dispatching them silently with their arrows, ran no risk of scaring them ; but I was apprehensive that, if I fired my fusée, the explosion might spread terror among them, and that they would then return the way they had come.

My apprehensions, though founded in reason, were not verified. I fired repeatedly in all directions, but the column continued to advance as before ; and fear produced on their sheepish instinct no other effect than that of making them move on faster.

I frequently poured the contents of my fusée  
into



into the middle of this confused multitude, and each of my balls often brought down several of them at a time. Had I wished for as many, I might easily have procured a hundred; and I ceased firing, merely because such a quantity of game would have been of no use to me.

Every time I discharged my piece at these antelopes, their rumps, immediately and at the same moment, all became white; and those thousands of red backs flying before me formed, as it were, one sheet of snow, which seemed displayed only to disappear again in an instant.

I have already spoken of that singular property of the spring-buck antelope, which has the faculty of changing at will the colour of its rump, which is red, and of making it suddenly become white, as if by a kind of enchantment. A phenomenon of this nature presents at first to the mind something marvellous; it is, however, strictly true, and may be easily comprehended after the following explanation.

The long thick hair which covers the rump of the spring-buck antelope is, in general, of a tawny hue; but, though it appears to be entirely of that colour, it is only the surface that  
is



is really so; for underneath it is of a pure white, and in its natural situation this part is entirely concealed. Now all the hair on the rump grows from a strong tissue of muscular fibres, by means of which the animal can, at pleasure, extend or contract the skin; so that, when extended, the upper hair is laid flat to the right and left, and that below only, which is perfectly white, remains exposed to view, and even covers the rest. I cannot better describe this operation, than by comparing it to the action of opening and shutting a book placed on its back.

Another fact, more difficult to be explained, is the prodigious multiplication of these antelopes in a country infested with carnivorous animals, which it every where produces. I had in other places met with a few of their numerous flocks; but, when I beheld this, I often wondered how so many thousands of animals, which, by their number, must have dried up the streams, and consumed the pasturage of a whole district, could live in a place so barren and destitute of water. But though antelopes, as well as goats, have not the same need of drink as other animals, they doubtless com-  
monly

monly inhabit more fertile cantons, and there were such in the neighbourhood, as will presently be seen. In short, to give my readers an idea how numerous this herd was, I shall only say that, notwithstanding the rapidity of its course, it employed three whole hours to pass me.

In the relation of my first travels, I have mentioned this antelope under the name of the *gazelle de parade*—an appellation exceedingly well suited to it, as it seems to produce the change I have spoken of, merely for the purpose of ornamenting its rump with a splendid colour. On account of this denomination, I have been reproached by a Journalist with not having studied the true principles of the zoological nomenclature; but the critic was doubtless ignorant, that the above name is one of those given to this antelope at the Cape of Good-Hope, where the planters distinguish it by that of *pronk-bock* (the goat which adorns itself): it is known also by those of the leaping goat, and the goat of passage. All these different denominations are derived from the habits of the animal; and, in my opinion, they are all preferable to those strange and barba-

rous .

rous names, which present no analogy between them and the thing they express. For surely the truest principles of nomenclature are those which best paint the objects they are intended to make known.

I never saw any where so beautiful a breed of goats as among the Koraquas. I purchased several of them, which were added to my flock. When I passed through the district of the Twenty-four-Rivers, my friend Liewenberg had mentioned these animals, which he knew only by report, and he begged me, if I could, to bring him a male. Having found one that was really remarkable, both on account of its size and the length and breadth of its horns, I purchased it for my friend, at the expence of a nail of a moderate size, and a few glass beads.

With nails of different sizes I in like manner procured twenty-one oxen for my waggon. The savages shewed the utmost avidity to obtain the smallest bits of iron, because they served to make points for their assagays or their arrows.

Notwithstanding their great fondness for dress, they set more value on that metal than  
on

on glafs and copper beads, which furnifh them with ornaments. I am convinced, that for the iron work of the wheel of one of my carriages I fhould have received a herd of an hundred head of oxen.

It was probable that Swanepoel, in my abfence, was employed on the banks of Orange-River, according to my orders, in procuring me a team or two. But even if he had not fucceeded, which was very unlikely, I had, without his affiftance, a fufficient number to draw my carriages, in the oxen I had procured from the firft hordes through which I had paffed, and thofe I had lately purchafed. Being perfectly eafy on this head, I was now in a condition to return to my camp and refume my journey ; and my fecurity was fo much the better founded, as, my new oxen being accuftomed to the herbage of the diftrict, I had no reafon to apprehend that my progrefs would be interrupted by them, as it had been by the others.

A new plan, however, ftill detained me, and fufpended my return. I had many times heard of a brave and warlike nation, dreaded by all the favages in general of thefe countries : I  
mean



mean that of the Houzouanas. Being neighbours to the Boshmen on the east, they are often confounded with these people; but they differ from them in their disposition, language, and manners: they are, besides, a wandering tribe; and, proceeding in their emigrations from the one sea to the other, they shut up, as one may say, that part of Africa, and form a barrier across its whole breadth.

A people so different from all those I had seen deserved to be known. My design was to secure their friendship, which was become absolutely necessary, either if, after returning to my camp, I should wish to resume my journey, or if I proceeded back to the Cape to begin it again.

I was told that I could not penetrate into their country without traversing those of other nations. Many of the men belonging to Haripa's horde proposed, however, to accompany me; and I accepted their offer, because I should have occasion for guides; but I would take only four, and I consequently sent back such of the Greater Nimiquas as had hitherto attended me. Haripa came with great ceremony to bid me farewell. Having wished him a numerous



merous progeny, a peaceful reign, and that the women might be more submissive, I set out at break of day, to avoid the heat, and proceeded on my journey, with an intention of halting on the banks of a river five leagues distant from the horde, where, according to the account of my guides, I should find as many rhinoceroses as I might wish. The natives call this river *Fish-River*.

Though we had marched only a few hours, I remarked, in the small space we traversed, a great change in the productions. On all sides I beheld different plants and different animals; and this novelty astonished me so much, that I resolved to stop some time, in order to search for and collect such curious objects as might be worthy of my attention. There are some vegetables and animals to which nature seems to have exclusively assigned certain climates, and which are to be found no where else. Thus, for example, I did not begin to find giraffes till I arrived at the twenty-eighth degree of latitude; and it was only under the twenty-fifth that I found a kind of wild ass, of an isabella or pale-yellow colour.

This animal is, by the Greater Nimiquas,  
VOL. III. D called

called the white zebra : but it is certainly a wild afs ; for, instead of having a striped skin like the zebra, it is of one colour, which has a yellow tinge. No animal in all Africa, perhaps, is so suspicious, and so shy as this kind of afs. It appears every where in large herds ; but I could never get near enough to fire at any of them. I have, however, in my possession a skin, which I purchased in a horde where it was employed to cover the hut of a savage. There are, therefore, three distinct species of the afs in the southern part of Africa : the zebra, the quagga, and the kind above mentioned, which is neither spotted nor striped.

At the Cape, the zebra is known under the name of *streep-ezel* (the striped afs), and the quagga under that of *wilde-paerd* (the wild horse). In the colonies the names and the animals are sometimes both confounded ; which, in natural history, may occasion errors, as has really happened ; for the quagga has often been considered as the female of the zebra. But the quagga and the zebra are undoubtedly two different species, which, though they live in the same district, have no more  
inter-

intercourse with each other than they have with the flocks of antelopes that inhabit those regions.

Vosmaer, who never travelled in Africa, and who, consequently, could know the quagga only from the accounts of others, pretends that it is a mixed breed, produced between the zebra and a wild horse.

False ideas are, in my opinion, entertained in Europe respecting the numerous supposed mixed breeds of desert countries. It is believed that nothing there is more common; but this is certainly a very great error. Buffon himself, convinced of their multiplication in Africa, and endeavouring to explain the cause, ascribes it to the heat of the climate; which rendering springs scarce, and giving occasion sometimes to animals of different species to assemble around water at the same time, favours such extraordinary copulations.

By assertions like these, we may distinguish theories formed in the closet. A naturalist who has travelled will be very cautious of hazarding them; and experience will teach him how much the savage differs from the domestic animal in its appetite for procreation.

The domestic state is a state of servitude, in which the individual, and even the species, more or less degenerates. Its natural instinct being thus altered, the animal is purposely heated by a particular kind of food: it is separated from the females and males of its own species, and is forced to produce monsters, which are only a deviation from nature. I call them a deviation, because, as they are barren, they thwart that law which she has imposed on all living beings, of producing others of the same kind. In a savage state the individual, perfectly free, invariably follows these laws, copulates with those of its own species, and never with those of another.

If in Europe we see pheasants produce with a species different from their own; if in our aviaries the canary bird produces with the fiskin\*, and the linnet with the goldfinch; it is only because they are forced to do so by being separated from their own females, and put into a cage with others of a different race; and even then it cannot be accomplished till these birds

\* *Fringilla spinus*. This bird is called in Suffex the barley-bird; because it appears about the time when the barley becomes ripe. T.

have become, as it were, naturalised among us. In vain would the experiment be attempted, or at least it would be more difficult to make it succeed, on the real canary bird, brought to Europe with the habits and instinct of its native country. My friend Temminck at Amsterdam has for many years had an immense aviary, in which he keeps all kinds of rare and foreign birds. The greater part of them multiply there as if in a state of liberty; but none of them have hitherto produced him a mixed breed.

The state of servitude in which a domestic animal lives, the food to which it is confined, and the education given it, alter and modify its nature. By living with us it appears, so to speak, to become corrupted and to assume our vices. This at least is found to be the case with the dogs, horses, &c. which we breed. I have been informed that, at the house of an upholsterer in the street Croix-des-Petits-Champs at Paris, a she-cat and a dog produced young ones, which lived. Had these animals been reared in a forest, sooner than copulate together, they would have devoured each other.



The quagga is not in reality, and cannot be engendered between a wild horse and the zebra; for there are no wild horses indigenous in the southern part of Africa. The horses seen there at present have been carried thither from Europe; but these never stray from the colonies, and none ever advanced, before mine, to the twenty-fifth degree of latitude, where there are both quaggas and zebras.

Besides, if that animal were a bastard breed of the zebra, the young ones, while suckled by the mothers, would be seen following them in the herds of zebras: but this has never been observed; and the herds of both species have as little intercourse as the different herds of antelopes. I have often seen, in the plains, herds of zebras and herds of quaggas at the same time; but I always saw them separate.

To all these proofs I shall add that, before European horses were introduced at the Cape, the quagga existed there, and was known to the natives. This animal is much smaller than the zebra; and its cry has a perfect resemblance to the barking of a dog. With regard to that of the zebra, it is exactly like the sound  
of

of a stone sliding on the ice, after being thrown with great force.

Disappointed in my hopes of getting near enough to shoot some of these isabella-coloured wild asses, notwithstanding the fatigue and trouble to which I subjected myself, I made amends for the loss by attacking the birds, without number, presented by this country, which now resounded for the first time with the report of a fusée. Plants, birds and quadrupeds, and, in short, almost every object, even to the disposition and form of the mountains, were new to me. The ground was every where covered with the most beautiful flowers; and I saw fluttering around me, on all sides, over this rural and brilliant parterre, a multitude of small birds of the species of the sugar-eater, which, embellished with the liveliest colours, came to sip their nectar, and seemed to be so many animated flowers themselves. The odoriferous juices on which they fed, being transformed into their substance, gave them an ambrosial perfume; which made me regret that I should have to place them one day in my collection, with birds which, hav-

ing fed only on carrion, caterpillars, and disgusting insects, retain also their smell.

I found here the different species which the younger Geoffroy has since brought from Senegal; and particularly barbicans, a variety of those described by Buffon, under the name of the Barbary barbican. I found also, in great abundance, *la petite veuve dominicaine*, described by Brisson, and remarkable for its modest plumage and the length of its tail. In short, that I may suppress uninteresting details, and give an idea of the treasures which this district presents to the ornithologist, I shall only observe that, of the genus alone of the sugar-eaters, or birds which feed on the juices of flowers, and which in many nomenclatures are classed, for what reason I know not, among the wood-peckers, I found seven distinct species.

With regard to large and small game, they were equally abundant; and I will venture to affirm, that this district would supply a sufficiency of provisions for an army of two thousand men.

In the midst of this immense menagerie, the  
variety

variety of which kept me in a continual state of enchantment, I was surprised not to find that prodigious number of rhinoceroses which had been mentioned to me by the people of Haripa's horde. One day, however, Klaas, who was always concerned in every matter of importance, and the first to communicate agreeable intelligence, came in great haste to my tent to inform me that he had observed, at some distance from my camp, two of these animals, standing quietly, close to each other, in the middle of the plain; and that I had it in my power to enjoy the pleasure of the finest hunt I had ever yet experienced.

The hunt, indeed, promised to be amusing; but, independently of danger, I foresaw that it was likely to be attended with difficulties. To attack two such formidable enemies, it was necessary to use great precaution, and that we should approach them in such a manner as that they might neither see nor smell us, which is always very difficult. I at first proposed to form a ring, which should surround them on all sides; and to advance upon them, gradually contracting the circle, so as to unite the moment we were about to commence our attack; but



but the savages assured me that, with these animals, this plan was impracticable. I gave myself up, therefore, entirely to their direction ; and we set out, armed alike, with a good fusée, and with the necessary courage. All my hunters wished to be of the party, and each proposed to display the greatest prowess. I caused two of my strongest dogs to be led in a leash, in order that they might be let loose on the rhinoceroses, in case it should be found necessary. We were obliged to make a long circuit to gain the lee-side of them, lest they should smell us ; and we reached the river, the course of which we followed under cover of the large trees that grew on its banks, when Klaas soon made us observe the two animals, at about the distance of a quarter of a league in the plain.

As one of them was much larger than the other, I supposed them to be a male and a female. Motionless by the side of each other, they were still in the same posture in which Klaas had first seen them ; but they stood with their noses to the wind, and consequently presented to us their rumps. It is the custom of these animals, when thus at rest, to place  
them-



themselves in the direction of the wind, in order that they may discover by their smell what enemies they have to dread. From time to time, however, they move their heads round to take a look behind them, and to be assured that they are safe on all sides; but it is only a look, and they soon return to their former position.

We were already deliberating on the dispositions to be made for commencing the attack, and I was giving some orders to my company, when Jonker, one of my Hottentots, requested that I would permit him to attack the two animals alone, as a *bekruyper*.

My readers will here recollect, that, when I foolishly attempted to cross the Elephants-River, near its mouth, on the trunk of a tree, Jonker was one of the swimmers who saved my life; and that in return, at the desire of his companions, I raised him to the rank of hunter. At that time he was entirely a novice in this exercise; but I have already remarked, that he afterwards became a most excellent shot, and surpassed all the rest of my hunters, particularly in the art of *creeping*.

I have before observed, that hunting in  
Africa

Africa has no resemblance to that in Europe ; that to get within reach of certain wild animals, we must approach them without being perceived ; and that it is impossible to get near them but by creeping on the belly. Those who have acquired this art are called *bekruypers* ; and it was in this quality that Jonker asked leave to attack alone the two rhinoceroses, assuring me that he would acquit himself to my satisfaction.

As his design would not prevent the execution of our plan ; and as, in case his particular attack should not succeed, it would not impede our general one, I granted his request. He then stripped himself naked, and, taking his fusée, proceeded towards the animals, creeping on his belly like a serpent.

In the mean time, I pointed out to my hunters the different posts they were to occupy. They repaired to them by circuitous ways, each accompanied by two men. As for me, I remained on the spot where I was, with two Hottentots, one of whom held my horse, and the other my dogs ; but, to avoid being seen, we posted ourselves behind a bush.

In my hand I held a glass, which had often  
enabled

enabled me to see the operation of stage machinery, and the effect of our theatrical decorations. How changed the scene! At this moment it brought before me two hideous monsters, which at times turned towards me their frightful heads. Their movements, which indicated fear and observation, soon became more frequent; and I was apprehensive they had heard the agitation of my dogs, who, having discovered them, made efforts to escape from the keeper, and rush upon them.

Jonker still kept slowly advancing, but with his eyes fixed on the two animals. If he saw them turn their heads, he stopped and remained motionless. One would have taken him for a large stone; and indeed, in this respect, I myself was deceived.

He continued creeping, with various interruptions, for more than an hour. At length I saw him proceed towards a large bush of euphorbia, which was only two hundred paces from the animals. Being certain, when he reached it, that he could conceal himself there without being seen, he rose up; and, casting his eyes every where around, to see  
whether

whether his comrades had arrived at their posts, he made preparations for firing.

During the time he was creeping along, I had followed him with my eye ; and, in proportion as he advanced, I felt my heart beat with involuntary palpitation. This palpitation, however, increased, when I saw him so near the animals, and just upon the point of firing at one of them. What would I not have given at that moment to have been in the place of Jonker, or at least by his side, that I might have brought down also one of these savage monsters ? I waited with the utmost impatience for the report of the gun, and I could not conceive what prevented him from firing ; but the Hottentot who stood near me, and who was able by the bare sight to distinguish him as perfectly as I could with my glass, informed me of his design. He told me, that Jonker did not fire, because he was waiting till one of the rhinoceroses should turn round, that he might, if possible, take aim at its head ; and that, on the first motion they made, I should hear the report.

Presently the largest of the two, having  
looked



looked behind, was immediately fired at. Being wounded, he sent forth a horrid cry; and, followed by the female, ran furiously towards the place from which the noise had proceeded. I found my heart now agitated by the most violent emotion; and my fear was carried to its utmost extent. A cold sweat diffused itself over my whole body; and my heart beat with such force as to prevent me from breathing. I expected to see the two monsters tear up the bush, tread the unfortunate Jonker under their feet, and rend him to pieces; but he had thrown himself down with his belly on the ground, and this stratagem succeeded. They passed close by his side without perceiving him, and came straight towards me.

My fear now gave place to joy, and I prepared to receive them; but my dogs, animated by the report they had heard, became so restless on their approach, that, being unable to check them, I ordered them to be let loose, and encouraged them to the attack.

When the animals saw this, they instantly turned aside, and proceeded towards another of the hunters placed in ambush, from whom



they received a second fire, and then to another, from whom they received a third. My dogs, on the other hand, harassed them prodigiously, which still increased their rage. They kicked at them in the most terrible manner; ploughed up the plain with their horns; and, digging furrows in it seven or eight inches in depth, threw around them a shower of pebbles and stones.

During this time we all kept approaching, in order to surround them more closely, and to unite against them our forces. The multitude of enemies by which they found themselves enclosed rendered them completely furious. The male, however, suddenly stopped; and, turning round to attack the dogs, endeavoured to rip up their bellies with his horn; and while he was engaged in pursuing them, the female quitted him and made her escape.

I was highly pleased at her flight, which I considered as a fortunate circumstance; for it is certain that, notwithstanding our number and our arms, we should have been much embarrassed by two so formidable adversaries. I must even confess, that, without the assistance of my dogs, we should not have been able to

combat, but with great hazard and danger, the one that remained. The bloody traces, which he left wherever he went; announced that he had received more than one wound; but, reduced to despair, he only defended himself with the greater obstinacy.

After a fruitless attack, which continued for some time, he began to retreat; and seemed as if desirous of gaining some bushes, apparently with a view of finding shelter, and to prevent his being harassed but in front. I guessed his stratagem; and, in order to disappoint him, I rushed towards the bushes, and made a sign to the two hunters who were nearest me to advance thither also. He was only thirty paces from us, when we took possession of the post; accordingly we all at the same time presented our pieces, and; discharging our three shots, he instantly fell, and was never after able to rise.

I beheld his fall with the utmost satisfaction: as a hunter and a naturalist, it afforded me a double triumph.

Though mortally wounded, the animal still continued to defend himself when lying on the ground, as he had done when on his legs. With his feet he threw around him heaps of

VOL: III. E stones;

stones ; and neither we nor our dogs durst venture to approach him. I wished to put an end to his torment, by firing one more ball, and was making preparations for the purpose, when my people entreated me to desist. As I could not ascribe their request to sentiments of pity, I was at a loss to conceive what could be their motive.

I have already said, that all the savage tribes, and even the people at the Cape and in the colonies, set a high value on the dried blood of the rhinoceros, to which they ascribe great virtues in the cure of certain disorders, and which they consider, in particular, as a sovereign remedy for obstructions. The reader will recollect, that when Swanepoel, intoxicated by Pinar, fell under the wheels of my carriage, and had one of his ribs broken, he asked me for the blood of the rhinoceros ; but, as none of it could be had, he drank some brandy in its stead. Nature alone effected a cure ; but he ascribed it to the liquor, and acknowledged that this remedy, equally proper, he said, for the sick and the sound, was preferable to the other. His companions, however, had retained their prepossession ; and they were determined

to have a store of rhinoceros-blood. The animal had lost a great deal by his wounds. It was with much regret that they saw the earth moistened with it around him; and they were apprehensive that a new wound would increase that loss.

Scarcely had the animal breathed his last, when, both old and new Hottentots, all approached with eagerness, in order to collect the blood. With that view they cut open its belly, and took out the bladder, which they emptied. One of them then applied the mouth of it to one of the wounds, while the rest shook a leg of the animal to make the blood flow more readily. In a little time, to their great joy, the bladder was filled; and I am persuaded that with what was lost they might have filled twenty.

I had approached the body also, but with a different design; for my intention was only to measure and examine it. The savages of the horde, accustomed to see such animals very often, assured me that it was one of the largest of its species. I, however, did not believe them; and what induced me to doubt their information was, that its principal horn was

only [in French measure] nineteen inches three lines in length ; and I had seen horns much longer in the possession of some of the Dutch planters. The height of the animal was seven feet five inches, and its length, from the snout to the root of the tail, eleven feet six inches.

Respecting the African rhinoceros, Dr. Sparmann has published a learned dissertation, as valuable for the researches he made, as for the truth and correctness of the facts he relates. To attempt to speak of the animal after him would be exposing myself to repetition, or to the shame of being accounted a plagiarist. I regret, however, that a work in which the rhinoceros is so well described should be accompanied with so faulty a figure.

I allude only to the engravings published in the French and Dutch translations. Having never seen the Swedish original, I do not know whether it be equally defective ; and under that uncertainty I shall one day publish a drawing of the animal, such as I took it from nature. In the translation of Bruce's Travels into Abyssinia, there is another figure of the two-horned rhinoceros ; but it is faulty also ; as  
the



the French engraver has improperly given it the folds of the one-horned rhinoceros, which it certainly has not, at least in the southern part of Africa: and that these animals are so formed in Abyssinia, I very much doubt.

In speaking of Quammedaka, a canton situated to the east, Mr. Sparmann says, "that it is the principal abode of the two-horned rhinoceros." The author is here mistaken; but his error is the more pardonable, as he had not an opportunity of visiting countries which would have afforded him better information.

The tiger, the lion, and other quadrupeds, which live upon prey, frequent districts where flocks are fed, and which produce an abundance of wild animals. With the rhinoceros the case is different. As his food, like that of the elephant, consists in vegetables, which are every where to be found, and as he is still more savage, he removes, like the elephant, from all inhabited places.

It may be readily perceived, therefore, that with such habits, instead of preferring for his residence a peopled district, interspersed with farms, like that of Quammedaka, he ought on the contrary to avoid it. If from time to time

some few are seen there, they are, as one may say, lost travellers, which, being soon discovered and pursued by the inhabitants, are either killed or obliged to seek their native country as fast as possible.

If there were abundance of rhinoceroses in Quammedaka in the time of Dr. Sparmann, there were none there in my time, any more than in the colony itself, which they deserted in proportion as it began to be better peopled.

“ Bontius,” adds Mr. Sparmann, “ remarked long ago, that the rhinoceros is generally killed with powder and ball. Buffon, probably, did not pay attention to this passage, when he asserts, on the authority of Gervaise, that the skin of the rhinoceros cannot be pierced by any ball.”

If we can give credit to certain travellers, the one-horned rhinoceros, the scaly skin of which is folded back on the neck, in the form of a mantelet, is so hard that it withstands a musket shot; and it is probably this species to which Buffon alludes.

For my part, I am acquainted with those only of Southern Africa, and never saw any but the two-horned rhinoceros, which has a smooth  
skin

skin like the elephant. No other kind is known at the Cape and in the colonies; and with regard to this species, its skin is not proof against ball; as is proved by the hunt of which I have here given the history; and I am persuaded, that the case is the same with the one-horned rhinoceros.

The small horn of the one we killed was a third shorter than the other. I have already remarked, that the large one was nineteen inches in length; but what surprised me was to find that this so formidable weapon, with which he ploughed up the earth to a great depth, and threw around him very large stones, was not implanted in the bone of the head; that it adhered only to the skin, and that when the skin was shaken, it moved also.

The eye of the rhinoceros, much too small in proportion to so enormous a body, is sunk very deep into the head; because the external skin, raised round the orbit in several circular folds, forms a tube some inches in length, at the bottom of which it is placed.

This tube, by diminishing the field of sight and concentrating the visual rays, may perhaps serve to strengthen the organ; but it prevents

the animal from seeing any other objects than those which are in the direction of its eye. The savages, therefore, when not in that direction, think themselves in safety, even when very near the animal, because he cannot then observe them.

A singular peculiarity of the two horned rhinoceros is, that he ploughs up the ground with his horn as he runs along, and at the same time throws his urine to a great distance behind him, making a kind of kicking with his feet. Another remarkable custom of this animal is that of beating to pieces with his feet his excrements, which he never leaves whole like the elephant.

Though the flesh of the rhinoceros does not approach that of the hippopotamus, it is far superior to that of the elephant.

My savages promised themselves a delicious feast; and the idea alone of this treat was more than an equivalent for all the dangers to which they had been exposed. What enjoyment to them was an animal which weighed at least two or three thousand pounds! As night was approaching, and as they wished to have their feast that evening, they all immediately

diately began to cut from it such pieces as they liked. In less than an hour, each had his load; nor did the carcase appear to be in the least diminished; but they proposed to return to it the next and following days with all their companions, in order to cut it up completely.

I had resolved to return along with them, in hopes that this immense body might attract some birds of prey, which I should be able to procure without much difficulty; but, when I was preparing to depart, my attention was attracted by melodious strains, such as I had never heard, which proceeded from all parts of the banks of the river. I advanced, therefore, under the trees, and actually discovered a number of birds, with which I had till that moment been unacquainted. By thus passing suddenly from the hunting of quadrupeds to the pursuit of birds, I gave some rest to my imagination fatigued with carnage; and I saw diminished, in the proportion of the objects, that natural horror and disgust which it often excited. Frequently I turned my eyes upon the verdure and the flowers; and if any portion of disgust, inseparable from a wandering and solitary existence, happened to surprise  
me



me in the midst of my fatigues, the meanest plant, by catching my sight and stopping my career, recalled me to that satisfactory sentiment of existence, which so deserted a condition would otherwise have destroyed. I strayed along the banks of the river, and penetrated into the woods, where I killed several new species of birds, which I had never before found. Embarrassed often in my choice, when I observed many on the same tree, I was at a loss which I should fire at; but, as may be readily conceived, I gave a preference always to the most remarkable or the most beautiful.

But let us turn our attention to an object not less touching, to colours perhaps more brilliant and delightful.

While occupied with birds, their melodious warblings, their splendid and variegated plumage, I advanced through a grove of mimosas, when my organs of smell were suddenly struck with the most exquisite perfume. I sought, therefore, for the plant or shrub which afforded me so delicious a pleasure. The surrounding air served me as a guide; and the nearer I approached to the flower, the more was I intoxicated with the smell. I had reached the  
banks

banks of the river, when my admiration was excited by the sight of a magnificent plant, the most beautiful I had ever contemplated; but I was obliged to raise my head in order to admire it. It was a lily seven feet in height, which, waving majestically on its flexible stem, breathed forth its delicious odour.

On the upper part of its straight tapering stem were displayed, in elegant order, thirty-nine corollas or flowers, six of which were half blown, eighteen in full bloom, and fifteen ready to open. Those which had attained to their complete size formed a calyx, a third larger than that of the white lilies of Europe. Their petals, of a beautiful flaxen grey on the outside, and white as snow within, were edged with a crimson border, and were set off by a pistil and stamina, which in colour equalled the brightest carmine. The stem, seven feet in height, was, where thickest, six inches in circumference. Reddened on the side towards the sun, which had given it a vinous tint, it was green every where else, and bore leaves three feet in length, and in breadth three feet and a half. In a word, this plant, produced in a solitude, and pure as the sun which had embellished

bellished it, had been respected by all the animals of the district, and seemed defended even by its beauty.

This wonderful object, which I had discovered, struck me so powerfully, as to occupy my whole attention. All my plans of hunting were now forgotten; I gave peace to the birds of which I was in pursuit; and thought of nothing but the means of procuring my beautiful lily.

This, however, was a matter of some difficulty. I had neither instruments proper for digging up the earth without damaging it, nor a basket, or other vessel of the like kind, to hold it. To go to my waggons in quest of what I wanted, would have been to abandon it; and I should have perhaps exposed it to a danger it never before experienced. Under this embarrassment, and unwilling to lose sight of it, I resolved to fire several shots, in order to call to my assistance some of my people.

On this signal of alarm, several of them hastened towards me. They imagined me exposed to some danger, and were surprised to see me in ecstasy before a flower. I sent to my camp for some iron tools, and a basket  
like

like those pretty ones given to me by Narina. When they arrived, we dug up with great caution the bulb of the lily, which was thirteen inches in height, and twenty-seven in circumference. In shape and colour it resembled that of the tulip; but, instead of being composed of separate coats, like the bulb of the lily, it was full, pulpy, and very heavy. I at least conjectured so by analogy from what I saw of the exterior part, which, notwithstanding all our care, had been cut by the iron implements used to dig up the earth around it.

The flower, when arranged, and in a manner planted in its basket, was placed at the entrance of my tent by way of ornament. The corollas all opened and expanded in succession; and, for a long time, I enjoyed the pleasure of beholding it, and of smelling its delicious odour, till its perfume being exhausted, and having no longer strength to attract the moisture which nourished it, I saw it droop, wither, and die.

I had the good fortune to preserve the bulb of this lily during my whole journey; and I carried it to the Cape, with a design of sending it to the botanical garden; but the reader may have



have seen, in the account of my first journey, the fate of those seeds which I had collected, and this bulb was unluckily among them.

It was the 4th of January when we encamped on the banks of Fish-river. During my residence in this country, I had often changed my encampment, in order that, by my different stations, I might find new objects; and it had indeed furnished me, in birds alone, with more than eighty distinct species, ten of which were new.

I was sorry, therefore, to quit a district so agreeable, and which, independently of what it added to my collections, ensured me abundance of provisions for my people. On the 24th, however, I announced my intention to depart; but my Hottentots having come in a body to request leave to complete their preparations of the flesh of the rhinoceros, I agreed to remain three days longer. During this delay they exerted themselves with much ardour. Men and women, all laboured on the animal without remission; and, when I set out, they regretted much that they were obliged to leave behind a great deal more than they carried with them.



To reach a horde of Kabobiquas, whom I proposed to visit, we had only to march eight leagues; but as the road lay across mountains so parched, and passes and defiles so difficult, that one day would not be sufficient, my Koraqua guides advised me to set out in the night, if I wished not to be exposed to the necessity of sleeping by the way, and to the hazard of being destitute of water. We began our march, therefore, at two in the morning, proceeding north-east; and towards noon we halted to dine under the shelter of some rocks, which protected us from the scorching heat of the sun.

As we had still three leagues to march, I was desirous, according to my custom, that Klaas and some more of my Hottentots should go on before, accompanied by the two guides, and repair to the horde to inform them of my approach. My Koraquas, however, assured me that this precaution was perfectly useless; which made me suspect that some of their tribe had taken the start of me, and gone thither without my knowledge.

The Kabobiquas, indeed, were waiting for me with childish impatience. Every thing  
that

that had been told them respecting me bore the character of the most enthusiastic exaggeration ; and their imaginations had still heightened the extravagance of these accounts.—The white man, his fusces, his equipage. objects none of which they had ever before seen; awakened their curiosity ; and the delay of my arrival was a kind of torment to them.

As soon as they perceived my company; the whole horde quitted the kraal, and ran with eagerness to meet me. I experienced here, along with an additional degree of trouble and importunity, all that tumultuous activity, which I had before, more than once; experienced in the new hordes of savages which I visited. I was surrounded by men and women indiscriminately, who thronged about me to examine my person. Not being able to believe their eyes in regard to what they saw, they endeavoured to obtain more satisfaction by touching me. They felt my hair, hands, and almost every part of my body. My beard, above all, astonished them to an inconceivable degree. More than thirty persons came in succession, and half unbuttoned my clothes.

They

They all imagined me to be a hairy animal; and supposed, without doubt, that my body was covered with hair as long as that on my chin; but, finding this not to be the case, they were astonished, and confessed, with the openness of savages, that they had never seen the like in any man of their country. The little children, terrified at my appearance, hid themselves behind their mothers. When I attempted to lay hold of any of them, in order to caress them, they sent forth loud cries, as a child would do in Europe who should see a negro for the first time.

Such was my situation among this multitude, who pressed upon me in crowds. Though the only person of my colour among them, I resigned myself to them without fear. The astonishment which many of them showed at the sight of a white man, and the tumult it occasioned, did not surprise me.

Through this harassing curiosity I more and more perceived that invariable principle of nature, which gives to the savage a simple, mild, and unsuspecting character: and indeed, before I had been twenty-four hours in the horde, I was become the friend of every one, and the most

perfect confidence was established between us. The children even, who, when they first saw me, had been so much terrified, grew quite familiar. I had gained their affection by giving them small bits of sugar-candy; and the little epicures, attracted by this dainty, were continually caressing me, in order to make me open the box in which it was contained.

I must again repeat, for the sake of those travellers who, like me, may undertake to traverse unknown countries, that if they do not descend to the level of the simple people they may visit; if they do not pursue the measures necessary to please them; if they do not endeavour to become acquainted with their genius, to attach them by interest, and to secure their friendship, they will undoubtedly meet with nothing but misfortune and disaster.

I flatter myself that I left among all those whom I visited a favourable impression of the whites. By this I have rendered a service to the curious, who may be disposed to pursue my course; and I shall think myself amply rewarded if it prove useful to them, and particularly if they do not abuse it.

The chief of the horde shewed me every  
mark



mark of attachment. He was a man advanced in life, and of a majestic figure. He wore a long mantle, which hung from his shoulders to the ground, and which, formed of four jackal skins joined together, was bordered at the sides with that of a hyæna.

The hyæna of this country is the same as that of which a figure and description are given in Buffon; and I speak of it here, because travellers, when they mention that of the Cape, confound them together, though they are very different, and because I have seldom had an opportunity of seeing it in the course of my travels.

The names of three different species of the hyæna are known at the Cape, though they are all comprehended under the common appellation of wolf.

The first kind, which is seen ofteneft, and most dreaded by the planters on account of their flocks, is that of which I have given a figure under the name of the spotted wolf; a denomination it generally bears in all the colonies.

The second is called *strand-wolf* (shore-wolf), from its never quitting the sea coast or



the borders of rivers. I had no opportunity of seeing it; but the places which it frequents make me conjecture that it is ichthyophagous, and feeds upon fish. I was assured that it has no spots, and that it is entirely of a tawny colour.

With regard to the third, named *gestreepte-wolf* (the striped wolf), it is probably the hyæna described by Buffon. I must however remark, that, not having seen it in the neighbourhood of the Cape, I doubt much whether it be the same as the hyæna to which the planters give that name: perhaps they know it only by tradition. For myself, I can say that I never saw but two kinds in all that part of Africa which I traversed, viz. the spotted wolf, and the hyæna of the naturalists. The latter I found no where except beyond the country of the Greater Nimiquas, towards the tropic. When I returned to the Cape and gave it out as the striped wolf, every body believed me, and no one doubted the truth of what I advanced. It may nevertheless be different in some particular characteristic, and form a fourth species distinct from the rest. At some future time, perhaps, they will be all better known.

Whilst

Whilst I was conversing with the chief by means of my interpreters, I observed that his left-hand wanted two joints of the little finger. I thought proper to ask him the reason, and was informed, that, having in his infancy had a severe illness, amputation had been employed to cure him.

Though he answered my question, I perceived that it had not been agreeable to him. During the rest of our conversation, he seemed to be uneasy, that from time to time I cast my eyes towards his hand; and, till the moment of my departure, he always endeavoured to conceal it when we were together.

This custom of a savage people, who, to relieve a man in pain, add new sufferings to his evils, affords a vast field for reflection; and I acknowledge that this instance contradicts my experience, for I never saw in any other part of Africa a man either mutilated or deformed.

Mr. Paterfon tells us, that he observed instances of the same practice among a horde at the mouth of Orange-river; which is not improbable. However absurd a custom may be, savage tribes, when they are neighbours, may bor-

row it from each other; but that it should be common among the islanders of the South Seas, who, since their country was first inhabited, had never seen strangers before Cook and Bougainville, is truly astonishing.

I was very desirous of interrogating minutely the people of the horde on this subject. I wished also to propose some questions to them respecting other customs which appeared to me singular; but difficulties increased the more I advanced into the country. The Kabobiquas spoke a particular language; and this dialect, though accompanied with the clapping noise of the Hottentots, was understood only by the Koraquas, who, on account of their vicinity, kept up some intercourse with them.

The case was the same with the language of the Koraquas, in regard to their neighbours the Nimiquas. When the chief of the horde, therefore, wished to speak to me, he addressed what he had to say to my Koraquas, who translated it for the Nimiquas into their language; and the latter, translating it in their turn, transmitted it to the Hottentots of Klaas Baster's horde, who explained it to me in  
2 theirs.

theirs. The same method was employed with my answers. Nothing reached my ear till it had passed through four different mouths. The result, however, made me easily perceive, that the idea was conveyed to me with as much alteration as are the thoughts of the ancient poets to those unacquainted with the learned languages, notwithstanding the sublime genius of our translators.

The Hottentots whom I had procured at the Cape and in the colonies understood none of these dialects; and they were, consequently, of no service in our conferences: a circumstance which seemed to vex them. But what chagrined me more, and rendered my conversation truly fatiguing, was, that my Nimiquas understood the Koraqua language very imperfectly; so imperfectly indeed, that they often disputed respecting the meaning of what was said to them.

It therefore sometimes happened, that, when I asked any thing, the answer had no relation to the question. No remedy could be found for this inconvenience; and it was likely to increase, the farther I advanced into



the country. If from the district of the lesser Nimiquas to the Kabobiqua horde I had found four distinct languages, which required four different interpreters, what would be my situation in this respect when advanced several hundred leagues farther from the colonies ! What difficulties must arise, if each tribe I fell in with had its own dialect ! All these embarrassments, however, did not discourage me so much as my people : for I could always have recourse to the mother of all languages, the language of signs.

Of all the hordes I had hitherto seen, none seemed to display so much refinement in their ornaments and dress as that of the Kobabiquas. I did not find among them those beads and other toys common at the Cape ; for the traffic carried on in these articles had not been extended to them. They wore such trinkets of copper and oblong pieces of glass as I have before mentioned, which had been brought to them by worthless and thievish blacks, with whose language they were unacquainted, and with whom they often had to combat ; because, when they were returning after having sold their merchandize, they endeavoured



deavoured to seize it again, and sometimes even cattle along with it.

The articles of trade in that way which I had were unknown ; and, with this merit of novelty, they could not fail to please. Scarcely had I shewn some of them, when they instantly excited disputes ; and every one wished to get a share of them. In this respect, the women were the most importunate. My readers may judge of the general impatience, when I inform them, that, in one day, I procured twenty oxen for almost nothing. But the most advantageous bargain I concluded was for a *bakkely os* (war ox) which belonged to the chief.

This animal, as remarkable for his elegant form as his gigantic size, was the most beautiful of his species I had ever seen. His head was majestically armed with two immense horns, which retiring from each other, with the utmost symmetry, to form two perfect semicircles, suddenly bent their summits forwards, leaving a space of four feet eight inches between them. They had been made to grow in that figure by the chief himself ; and on this account he placed so high a value  
on

on the animal, that at first he would not part with him. But I displayed before his eyes such a variety of objects, that he could not resist the temptation; and he at length consented to resign him for a tinder-box, some tobacco, several strings of glass beads, two tin bracelets, and a few nails.

Next day, however, he seemed to regret his bargain; or rather, having seen in my possession some new object, which pleased him more than those which he had received in exchange the evening before, his desire was fixed on these; and he wished to give back the others. This natural passion for possessing every thing was the cause of an event which deserves to be particularly related, as it had nearly proved fatal to me.

Though I wore my beard long, I was accustomed, from time to time, to shave my mustaches. This operation afforded me an agreeable refreshment; and I very frequently performed it, especially when our approach towards the tropic rendered the heat less supportable.

I was employed in soaping my lips, when the chief entered my tent, accompanied by

two

two of his friends or relations. Free from all the ceremonial of politeness towards people who were not acquainted even with the first principles of it, I continued what I had begun. The savages, who did not comprehend what I was about, appeared very much surprised. They waited in silence for the result, and with their eyes followed all my movements. The water which frothed in the basin, and which I brushed over my lips, seemed to them to be the effect of magic; but, when they saw me apply the razor to my mustaches, and the hair disappear so readily from the place I had touched, their astonishment at this prodigy exceeded the power of words to express.

To render it still more sensible to them, and to shew the effects of it more closely, I laid hold of the chief's kross at one of the ends, and in an instant made it as smooth as my hand.

This savage was a man of good sense, and possessed more understanding than the generality of his equals. On the first view, he perceived of what inestimable value a razor would be to him, to shave the hair from a  
summer

summer mantle, and how much it would shorten his labour. At first he testified, by several expressive signs, his admiration of so wonderful an instrument; and then, without wasting time by words which I could not have understood, he endeavoured to shew, by other gestures equally significant, how desirous he was to possess it.

This was the first time we had spoken without interpreters: but his movements were so energetic, that I had no need of a verbal explanation to comprehend them. He gave me to understand, that he was now displeased with the bracelets, girdles, and tobacco, which I had given him in exchange for his war ox the evening before; and that he would return all these for the razor, if I would agree to give it him.

The new bargain which he proposed was by no means in his favour. I was well aware that a razor in his hands, employed to cut without soap the strong hair of a dry skin, would in a little time be rendered useless. I was very desirous of making him sensible of what, in this respect, his inexperience prevented him from knowing: but how was I  
to



to explain myself? In the heat of his impatience, he had already ordered one of his attendants to bring from his hut the articles to be returned. For my part, I was resolved to give him the razor, and to request him to keep the whole : but, in the midst of this scene, a shot was suddenly fired near us ; and at the same time we heard the most frightful cries.

Rushing instantly from my tent, to enquire what was the cause of this noise, I saw a Kabobiqua flying as fast as he could from one of my hunters, while, at the distance of a hundred paces farther, three men were making the most lamentable clamour, and near them was a young girl lying on the ground. I made a signal to my hunter to approach me ; but the report of the shot, and the howling of the three men, had already spread alarm throughout the horde. Some cried out treachery ; others ran to their arms ; and I now imagined, that I was about to be massacred, with my whole company, and that I should be obliged to arm them in my defence. My situation was the more critical, as neither I, nor any person in the kraal, knew what was  
the



the cause of this confusion; and if I had known, how could I have explained it?

Under this embarrassment, I took the chief by the hand, and advanced with him towards the horde. Fear was painted in his countenance; tears began to drop from his eyes; and he spoke to me with great vivacity. He imagined, no doubt, that he was betrayed. He complained to me, and accused my people of perfidy; yet he readily followed me.

As I was without arms, and presented myself with the chief, I was received with confidence, and my appearance seemed in some measure to calm their perturbation. My people, who had seen me direct my course towards the kraal, hastened thither after me, to protect me; and their number overawed the multitude. At length, the whole mystery was cleared up, and we learned what had occasioned the tumult.

A Kabobiqua having met one of my hunters, who was returning with his fusée, wished to examine it, and begged him to shew it to him. In handling it, however, he accidentally touched the trigger; it instantly went off; and  
the

the savage, frightened by the unexpected explosion, threw down the fusee, and ran away as fast as he could.

At that time, three men of the horde and a young girl happened unluckily to be standing, at the distance of a hundred paces, in the direction of the piece. The latter received a single grain of shot in the cheek; and the others, a few grains in the legs and thighs. The author of the misfortune confirmed this explanation; tranquillity was soon restored; the savages deposited their arms; and I was surrounded only by friends as before.

Nothing remained but to enquire into the state of the wounded, and to give them every assistance in my power. Without loss of time, therefore, I repaired, still accompanied by the chief, to the place where they were. By the way we met the young girl, who was returning from the kraal, bathed in tears. The cause of her uneasiness was a grain of lead, which had, however, penetrated so little, that I forced it out by only pressing the part with my fingers. With regard to the three men, they lay rolling on the ground, howling in a most frightful manner,

manner, and exhibiting every symptom of despair.

I was astonished at their consternation, and could not conceive how men inured to sufferings should be so much affected by a few small punctures, the pain of which could have scarcely drawn tears from an infant. They at length told me the cause of their wailings. These savages, accustomed to poison their arrows, imagined that I had in like manner poisoned the lead with which they were wounded. They had, therefore, given themselves up as lost, and expected in a few moments to expire.

It was with great difficulty I could cause to be explained to them that they had nothing to fear. To convince them, in a manner still more satisfactory, I pulled down one of my stockings, and showed them, in the flesh of my leg, a dozen shots of lead, for which I was indebted to M. Papillon de la Ferté, who, when hunting in the plains of Gennevilliers, had fired at me instead of a rabbit.

Klaas approached the wounded savages also; and, without wasting time in words which they would not have understood, took from  
his

his shot-bag a few grains of lead, and, having shown them to the three men, immediately swallowed them. This conclusive proof, which I had never thought of, produced a most wonderful effect. Their cries instantly ceased; serenity again appeared in their faces; and their wounds were no more mentioned.

I was, however, apprehensive that the horde might still harbour in their minds some seeds of suspicion and animosity: but, when they saw the wounded men walk as usual, and seemingly well, they laughed at the whole adventure; and it produced no other effect than that of inspiring them with a dread of fire-arms, which none of them afterwards would venture to touch.

In the evening, when my fires were kindled, every body came to form a circle around them, and to dance according to custom. The whole conversation, if that term can be given to the tumultuous clamour of a multitude who spoke six different languages, was engrossed by the accident of the morning.

It amused me much, though I understood nothing of it. I heard only the word *kaaboup* pronounced by every mouth. This was the



name given by my Hottentots to a fufee; and it was adopted by all the favages who compofed the affembly. Of the Kabobiquas, fome imitated with their voice the found of the explofion, others represented the gestures of a perfon who takes aim to fire, and every one acted a part in the pantomime. This festive fcene continued the whole night; and thus ended a day which had threatened to be tragical and bloody.

The Kabobiquas have neither the flat nofe nor plump cheeks of the Hottentots. Their fkin alfo has not that baftard colour, which, being neither black nor white, renders them odious to both races; nor do they befmeare their bodies with thofe difgusting fat fubftances, on account of which one cannot approach them without being bedaubed with their filth, or acquiring an offensive fmell. In ftature they are as tall as the Caffres, and their colour is equally black.

I drew a portrait of one of thefe favages in all his glory; that is to fay, tattooed, covered with his trinkets and ornaments, and armed from head to foot, as on the day of battle.

He yielded to my defire with much complaifance;



plaisance; but I confess that, when I saw him enter my tent with his quiver at his back, his buckler on his arm, and his body nobly ornamented with a long mantle which swept the ground, and when he sternly rested on his lance, with his head elevated, and a determined look, I was struck with his martial air and his dignified appearance.

He several times interrupted my work to admire it; while I, transported in imagination to the remotest periods, and to countries situated under the same latitude on the other side of the equator, seemed to behold a Jugurtha or a Syphax in arms, marching to combat in the deserts of Numidia, in defence of his kingdom against the Romans. In writing my notes, therefore, every time I had occasion to speak of this warrior, I always mentioned him under the name of my Jugurtha.

The hair of this tribe, which is exceedingly short and much curled, is ornamented with small copper buttons, arranged with great art and symmetry. Instead of that apron made of a jackal's skin, employed by the Hottentot to cover what modesty bids him conceal, the Kabobiquas use a round piece of leather, the

edge of which is ornamented with a small indented circle of copper, and which is divided into different compartments, by rows of glass beads of various colours, all proceeding from the centre, and diverging towards the circumference, like the rays in our images of the sun.

This kind of veil is made fast to the groin by means of a girdle ; but, as it is only four inches in diameter, as it is deranged by the smallest movement, and as they give themselves little uneasiness respecting such accidents, it is very ill suited to the purpose for which it is applied. During the great heats, this small and almost useless apron is the only covering on their bodies. Its being so readily displaced enabled me to ascertain that they do not practice circumcision ; but it seemed to show also that, in regard to modesty, their ideas are very different from ours.

Though they go thus almost entirely naked,, their manners, instead of being licentious, are remarkably chaste. No females can be more prudent or more reserved than their women ; and when I compared them with those of the Greater Nimiquas, who seemed so forward

and

and so condescending, I could scarcely believe that so great a difference could exist at so small a distance.

My people, accustomed to the familiarity of the latter, were displeased with this severity; and the sacrifice they were obliged to make on that account seemed the more painful, as the Kabobiqua women were much prettier even than the Nimiquas.

Young girls, who in general among savages have not the same decency of conduct as their mothers, because, not being under the same obligations, they enjoy more liberty, were here equally modest and reserved. They showed, indeed, that sportiveness peculiar to their age, and which added to their charms; but it was the sportiveness of innocence. When the dance was finished, and their parents retired to the kraal, they all set out along with them, not one even remaining behind in my camp.

Whether from refinement of coquetry, or the effect of prudence, the Kabobiqua women do not tattoo their faces like their husbands and fathers. They do not even follow their example, in ornamenting their hair with cop-

per buttons ; and they always go bare-legged, though most of them wear sandals.

Their dress consists of an apron that reaches only half down the thigh ; a kross which, passing under the arm-pits, is tied on the breast ; and a long mantle like that of the men.

The mantle is made of skins not deprived of the hair ; and the kross, of tanned leather prepared like that used for gloves in Europe.

With regard to glass beads, they wear them as bracelets. They form them also into necklaces, which descend in different rows to the pit of the stomach ; and they suspend from their girdles several strings of them, which fall down their thighs below the apron.

These ornaments being very durable, the habit of seeing them renders the women almost indifferent to the pleasure of possessing them. Those they procured from me afforded at first great satisfaction, on account of their novelty. But when I shewed them scissars and needles, they gave the preference to these articles ; and this choice does honour to the good sense of the Kabobiqua ladies. Like their chief, they set a higher value on utility than ornament.



To give them needles, however, was not sufficient; it was necessary to teach them also to use them. I rendered them that service likewise; and they soon became so expert as to join together tolerably well two pieces of skin. For this operation, they employed a small thread of gut made in the horde; and the process I taught them appeared more expeditious, stronger, and neater, than that used in such cases by the savages, which consists in boring the skin with a spike or sharp-pointed bone, and putting the thread through the holes.

Since I returned from my travels, I have never seen a woman sew without thinking of my Kabobiquas; but, on maturer reflection, I am sorry that I made them acquainted with an art which, as they will not have it long in their power to practise it, must be a source to them only of regret.

When, during my first journey, I taught the Caffres to form a pair of forge-bellows, that which I made for them would at least serve as a model, and they were in possession of every thing necessary to enable them to construct others. But the case was not the same with

my Kabobiquas. Their needles would soon be broken and unserviceable, like the razor of the chief; and their chagrin would be increased by the impossibility of renewing them. If the knowledge of a new art affords by its advantages new enjoyments, it occasions also new wants; and to teach it to a people, without securing to them the means of exercising it, is making them a very bad present.

I should in like manner have much to reproach myself with, had I been the first person who made the Kabobiquas acquainted with tobacco and spirits. But, before my arrival among them, they used the former, which they received, in exchange for cattle, from the Nimiqua tribes their neighbours, to whom it was conveyed from the Cape, by passing through various hands in commerce. As this traffic, however, did not take place but under certain circumstances, tobacco was on that account exceedingly scarce, and a luxury which they could seldom enjoy. However, being often deprived of it, they can easily bear the want; and so indifferent are they upon the subject, that, if it were not brought to them, they would not go a step to procure it.

This

This indifference for an article, which I had seen eagerly sought for by all savage nations, and which was considered by them as an exquisite enjoyment, seemed to shew, as well as many other circumstances already mentioned, that there were traits in the character of these people which distinguished them from others. The case was the same as to strong liquors, on which they set no great value; and though there were among them some few individuals disposed to relish them, the greater number absolutely refused them.

If the contents of my flasks gave them little satisfaction, they were, however, much captivated with the flasks themselves. These transparent bottles excited their admiration in the highest degree. They called them *solid water*; for, notwithstanding the heat of the climate, these savages had seen ice on the summits of the mountains by which they are surrounded; and they entertained no doubt that the glass of my flasks was water, which I had rendered solid by magic, and which I prevented their fires from melting. As it was impossible for me to explain this matter, I did not attempt to undeceive them: and besides, with  
what

what advantage would it have been attended ? I suffered them, therefore, to continue in their error, and contented myself with conferring on them an obligation, by giving them all the empty bottles for which I had no use.

On their part, they vied with each other in shewing their generosity towards me ; and I must indeed allow, that I never saw a nation so disinterested. Every night they brought to my camp a considerable quantity of milk ; and they never came to spend the evening with my people, without bringing some sheep to regale them. I have seen many of them give away gratuitously, and without receiving any thing in return, part of their herds and their flocks ; and, when I departed, there were many persons in my caravan who possessed both sheep and oxen, which they had received as a pure gift.

What difference between these people, so affectionate, so generous, and the Greater Nimiquas, who always approached me with a piteous air, holding out their hands like mendicants, to ask of me every thing they saw !

With this benevolent disposition, the Kabobiquas have also a martial character. Their  
weapons



weapons are poisoned arrows, and a lance with a long iron point, but different from the assagay of the Hottentots. In battle their defensive armour consists of two bucklers; the one of a size sufficient to cover the whole body of the combatant; the other much smaller. They are both made of skins exceedingly thick, and proof against arrows.

The latter, which is of a round figure, and from twelve to fifteen inches in breadth, is borne on the lower part of the arm during the time of action; but, when it becomes useless, they remove it above the elbow towards the shoulder. It is ornamented with a copper ring placed round its circumference, and with several rows of beads displayed over its surface, forming compartments according to the whim of the owner, and distinguished by such colours as are most agreeable to his taste.

By means of this variety, the buckler of each is different, and has no resemblance to that of another; and as the individuals of a tribe know one another by their mode of tattooing, they can distinguish each other also by the manner in which they blazon their shields.

The courage which the Kabobiquas display  
in

in combat is particularly exercised in their hunting excursions, and above all against carnivorous animals. Intrepid, however, as it may be to attack the elephant and the rhinoceros, these species of animals are not objects of their vengeance; because, living upon grass and herbs, they have nothing to apprehend from them, either for themselves or their cattle. But the tiger, lion, hyæna, and panther, being enemies of a different kind, they declare against them implacable war, and pursue them without remission.

Of the spoils of these destructive animals they form their bucklers, girdles, sandals, krosses, mantles, &c. They consider it as a mark of honour to wear them; and they set a much higher value upon them than upon the skin of the rhinoceros or of the elephant. If they sometimes hunt the latter, it is only as objects of food; and they employ to catch them those concealed pits, which are the usual snares of the Hottentots: but this method, which requires both patience and labour, is very little suited to a people so brave and enterprising as the Kabobiquas.

Keen and resolute hunters, they add to native  
valour

valour the utmost activity. Nimble as deer, nothing can stop their course; neither excessive fatigue, nor the longest and most difficult journeys. I have often hunted in their company; and I always found them indefatigable and ready for every undertaking. But, notwithstanding all their skill and activity, they were never able to bring me within reach of a white zebra, nor of a particular kind of antelope, which I believe to have been a gnou, though it was larger than the gnous are in general.

These are the two species of animals that are most common in this part of the country. A great many rhinoceroses, and antelopes without number, are also to be seen; but, whether it be owing to the intense heat of the climate, to the place being unsuitable to their nature, or rather to the want of food proper for them, no giraffes are any longer to be found in it.

As the Kabobiquas possess so bold and resolute a character, one might be induced to believe that they are ferocious and intractable. Among all the African nations, however, which I have visited, I never knew one that so much practised obedience and subordination.

The

The chief here is not, as in other tribes, a principal among his equals ; he is a sovereign in the midst of his subjects, a master surrounded by his slaves. A word, a gesture, or a look, is sufficient to procure him obedience. Whatever be his orders, they are never contradicted ; and the case is the same in every particular family. What the chief is to the horde, the father is to his children. His commands are absolute ; and he exercises regal power at home, while he obeys elsewhere.

Though the tribe was very numerous, the wisdom with which it was ruled, and the good order that prevailed around me, announced, in the man by whom it was governed, an intelligence superior to that of all the savages I had before seen ; and I knew not a single individual, except old Haabas, that Nestor of the Gonaqua nation, who could be compared to him. As I conceived for him a very high esteem, it was a source to me of real pain that I was unacquainted with his language, and therefore not able freely to interrogate him respecting a thousand objects which it would have been highly gratifying to me to know.

His



His habitation was suited to his supreme dignity. It was, indeed, a hut only, like those of his subjects, and, like them, covered with the skins of animals; but it was much larger, as well as more elevated; and around it were six others, occupied by his family and destined for them alone.

The natural dryness of the country inhabited by the Kabobiquas obliges them to dig wells, for their own use as well as for their cattle; but as the same cause often dries up these wells, they are then forced to remove, and to seek elsewhere a soil more abundant in springs; for Fish-River, though considerable in the rainy season, is often during the great heats entirely destitute of water.

The long journeys, which these too frequent emigrations compel them to undertake, and the intercourse which they thence have with other nations, must necessarily inspire them with ideas unknown to the settled tribes; and it would not be unnatural to suppose, that to this extension of ideas are they indebted for that superiority of intelligence which elevates them above their neighbours: but I have already spoken of a nation, who, like them, being  
forced

forced to dig wells, and to become wanderers, have remained, nevertheless, in the inferiority of the savage state. Nature, perhaps, who has bestowed upon the Kabobiquas bodies more agile, and a more intrepid character, may have endowed them also with superior minds.

To the Kabobiquas I am indebted for my knowledge of the place where Orange-River has its source. I imagined that this river came from the central mountains; but they informed me, that, though in its progress it seemed to approach them, it took its rise at a great distance in the mountains situated farther to the north-east, and that it did not reach the former till after a winding course of considerable length.

In consequence of one of their emigrations, they had formerly settled on its banks, sixty leagues from the desert which they now inhabited; but being molested by the Houzouanas, and disappointed by the drought, they had removed from it, and came to encamp again in the spot where I found them.

Of all the African nations, they are the only people among whom I found any idea,  
however

however confused a one, of the existence of a deity. I do not know whether it be from their own reflection, or the communications of other tribes, that they have acquired this sublime knowledge, which would alone bring them near to a level with polished nations; but they believe, as far as I have been able to learn from my people, that beyond the stars there exists a supreme being, who made and who governs all things.

I must however observe, that on this subject their ideas are vague, barren, and unproductive. They have no conception of the future existence of the soul, or of rewards and punishments in another life; in short, they have neither worship, sacrifices, ceremonies, nor priests, and are total strangers to what we call religion.

I am well aware, that Kolben advances a very different opinion respecting these Africans; but I have already given my sentiments of that author. I will however acknowledge, that Kolben does not always deviate from the truth, and that his falsehoods even are founded upon facts, which he has wilfully

misrepresented, or adopted without sufficient examination.

He has been vaguely told, that there are some tribes among whom circumcision is usual, and that there are others who deprive their males of one testicle. On this authority he affirms, that all the different Hottentot hordes are circumcised; and he describes, in the most minute manner, and as an eye-witness, their manner of semi-castration, though he never went beyond the boundaries of the Cape.

It is natural that a father should dispose of his children, and that he should himself perform the ceremony of their marriage, if the custom of the country admits of a ceremony. With Kolben this simple practice is converted into a branch of religion, a sacrifice, a superstitious dance, an object of forcery, &c. There is a high priest, who, being entrusted with the business of circumcision, of semi-castration, and all the religious customs, also gives his benediction to marriage; and who, always master of an evacuation which unquestionably is less subject to our will than sovereign over it,



it, finishes the ceremony by pouring on the married couple a copious discharge of urine.

In the time of that author, the Kabobiquas were not known at the Cape, and I believe myself to be the first person by whom their name has been mentioned: but it is not impossible that he may have been told of some tribes, who, more courageous than others, or more exposed to the attacks of ravenous animals, made it a rule to combat them, and, like the Kabobiquas, considered it as an honour to wear their spoils. A fact so simple, in his opinion, would not have made a sufficiently brilliant figure in a relation of travels; nor would the reader have felt himself interested in an unadorned story of savages, who, to preserve their cattle, declare war against such animals as are their enemies. He has, therefore, embellished the narrative of this hunting, and converted it into an order of chivalry, to which no one is admitted but with particular ceremonies, performed by the high priest, and until he has given convincing proofs of his prowess. But I have insisted too long on improbable falsehoods and absurd

fables, and shall return, therefore, to my Kabobiquas.

Having procured every information in my power respecting these people, and added to my collection the birds found in their district, I was unwilling any longer to fatigue my horses in pursuing, to no purpose, animals which would not suffer me to approach them. I resolved, therefore, to quit the horde, and to visit another, established at the distance of a long day's journey to the north-west. The chief gave me guides to accompany me thither; and on the 9th of February we resumed our march.

We pursued our way for some time along very narrow paths, which however, in all probability, shortened our route; and at length, at the end of a defile, we discovered a plain which, extending towards the west, was bounded on the horizon by lofty mountains, the bottoms of which were covered with wood.

The verdure of these forests gave me reason to suppose that they were watered by some river; and they reminded me of the delightful

lightful borders of Fish-River, where I had sojourned with so much pleasure. I flattered myself that I should in like manner find there provisions in abundance for my company, new plants and animals to increase my collections, and objects with which I was unacquainted to gratify my curiosity. Accordingly I gave orders to my people to direct their course towards that quarter; and, though it was lengthening our way, we proceeded along the plain.

We had marched three hours, exposed to the scorching heat of the sun, when the horizon became suddenly darkened, and a frightful storm seemed gathering over our heads. Long and frequent flashes of lightning darted between the clouds; the thunder roared in a most awful manner; and our animals by their perturbed and restless movements announced that the tempest was likely to be tremendous.

Without losing time, my oxen were unloaded, my tent was erected, mats and skins were prepared to afford us shelter, and every one took a share in the labour. Our precautions, however, were of no avail. The wind became so impetuous that nothing could resist

it; my tent was overturned; and I was reduced to the necessity of covering myself with the canvas, while my people secured themselves in the best manner they could.

The rain in the mean time poured down in torrents, and so great was the deluge, that we might have supposed all Africa about to be inundated. The heavens, meanwhile, which seemed thus to dissolve into water, appeared by the lightning to be every now and then actually on fire. The flashes embraced the whole atmosphere; while the thunder, bursting on every side at once, made us all apprehend that we should infallibly become its victims.

I had seen violent storms in Caffraria; I was acquainted with those of the Cape, so much dreaded by mariners and travellers; and I had not forgotten those of Surinam, which, for two months together, rising daily with the tide, announce the season of drought: but till this period I had never beheld one so alarming; and, for the first time in my life, the sound of thunder made me tremble.

It is true, to secure and preserve my powder I had placed it near me under the canvass; and while I feared that the thunder might break over me, I feared also for my magazine, which,



which, by its explosion, would have blown me up along with it.

My terror on account of this double danger continued more than an hour. The thunder having at length ceased, though the rain still continued, each of us putting his head out from below his covering eagerly turned round his eyes to search for his neighbour; and, surprised to find the whole company alive, we congratulated each other on having escaped so imminent a peril.

My Kabobiqua guides alone seemed to be delighted with the storm. Accustomed, as they said, to experience similar and even more violent ones, they had, in general, their noise only without their advantage; but by this their wells would be filled with water, and fresh pasture would spring up for their cattle. They considered it, therefore, as a blessing; and so great was their joy, that they had sat all the while quietly exposed to the rain, without attempting in the smallest degree to shelter themselves from it.

All our cattle, sheep, oxen, and goats, during the storm, had dispersed themselves in different quarters over the plain. Having col-

lected them, and being desirous to find a spot for an encampment near the wood and supposed river, I again pursued my route; for what could we do in the middle of a plain covered with water, and under a rain which, though in some measure abated, continued still to fall with violence? Already wet to the skin, I considered the inconvenience of being soaked a little longer as of no consequence.

My baggage, indeed, having been thoroughly drenched, was a double load to my oxen. The earth too, though sandy, had received so much rain, that it could not absorb the whole of it. In consequence, it was every where covered with pools; and the oxen, obliged to pass these cavities without knowing where they placed their feet, stumbled at every step, and ran the risk of being lamed under their burdens.

When we arrived at the edge of the wood, the rain fortunately ceased altogether; and the calm which followed allowed us to kindle fires to dry our baggage and clothes. The remainder of the day, and even the night, were employed in this business; but we were several times interrupted by the crashing of trees, which

which we heard very near us. This noise was occasioned by elephants, which we drove away by firing our fuses, and which, coming in quest of pasturage in the neighbourhood of my camp, were breaking the branches to procure themselves food.

Next morning, when day appeared, I saw in the plain, on an extent of scarcely half a league, more than a hundred of these animals collected together. They perceived us as distinctly as we perceived them; but they, nevertheless, appeared not to be in the least startled.

At this sight my hunters were transported with joy. They immediately got ready their arms, and were magnifying, in imagination, the ivory with which this wonderful hunt was to supply them. For my part, being no longer a novice, the eagerness I had formerly felt was gone. Satiated in some degree with this amusement, I did not forget the dangers with which it is almost always accompanied. The inconvenience, besides, of transporting without a waggon the teeth of these animals, inspired me with no great desire of possessing them.

While such were my ideas, a bird of a new species would have appeared more valuable to me than a dozen elephants. I began, therefore, to traverse the forest ; and I had the satisfaction to kill two charming animals of the feathered race, a male and a female. They considerably resemble the species of the ring-dove, though the difference is sufficient, in my opinion, to entitle them to a separate class, as they have a bill much larger than pigeons in general. Their claws are also more hooked, and their toes broader and flatter. In short, the most beautiful colours ornament their plumage, which, on the body, is, in general, of a brilliant green. The feathers of the wings are bordered with an elegant jonquille yellow, which is also the colour of the belly of the male. On the top of each wing is a large violet spot ; and the feet of both are red. This charming species, entirely new, will form a part of my ornithology, in which I shall give figures of them both.

The skirt of wood near which I had encamped lay in a direction N.  $\frac{1}{4}$  W. which was that of my route ; and, by keeping along the edge of it, I knew I should arrive at the horde

I in-



I intended to visit. After marching some hours, we found ourselves, however, stopped by a torrent, which, falling from the mountains, had been prodigiously swelled by the rain of the late storm; and, as it was necessary to wait till it should subside and become fordable, I was obliged to encamp on its banks. The place was agreeable; and I found in it birds of various kinds, which made me sufficient amends for the uneasiness occasioned by the delay.

Klaas, who by long practice had become a naturalist, and who knew as well as I what my collection contained, and what would be new in it, exerted himself with indefatigable ardour to augment it. He killed and brought to me a magnificent bird with which I was entirely unacquainted, and which exhibited characteristics so confused that I was at a loss how to class it.

On the first view I should have taken it for a cuckoo; but, though it had some relation to that genus, it did not in reality belong to it; for its feet were stronger, and its claws more hooked and notched: besides, Klaas, before he fired, saw it hook itself to the trunk of a tree,

tree, in the same manner as the wood-pecker, and, like the wood-pecker also, strike its bill against the bark.

Its claws and toes are absolutely the same, and divided precisely as are those of that bird ; but its tail is not capable of supporting it, as is the case with the tail of the wood-pecker. It does not, therefore, climb, but supports itself merely by hooking its claws in the bark of trees, on which it seeks for its food. It has a large crooked bill, and is, in short, one of those species which show the deficiency of our systems of ornithology. I shall not omit this beautiful bird in my descriptions.

The swell of the torrent did not continue longer than twenty-four hours, and the second day I was able to cross it without wetting my feet. We were now only three leagues from the horde, and some of the people who composed it, having at a distance observed my camp, approached towards us to reconnoitre it.

As they soon distinguished my Kabobiqua guides, their neighbours and friends, they advanced to pay me a visit. I inspired them with a favourable opinion of me by a few presents ;

sents ; and I gave them for their chief a small portion of tobacco, desiring them to inform him, that I intended to pay my respects to him in person, and that next morning I would be at the kraal with my whole company. We were not able, however, to set out till after dinner, because the oxen I had purchased at the last horde had returned thither during the night, and it was necessary to dispatch some of my people to bring them back.

The chief, accompanied by his whole horde, came two-thirds of the way to meet me ; and I found him waiting my arrival on the banks of a rivulet. As my appearance excited among this horde the same eagerness, the same surprise, and the same curiosity, as among the horde I had quitted, I shall not repeat what I have said already. It consisted also of Kabobi-quas ; and consequently their manners, customs, arms, and character, were the same.

The only difference I observed was, that in the former the men only wore sandals ; but in this horde they were worn by every body ; men, women, and children. This custom, however, does not proceed either from luxury or effeminacy, but from an indispensable and  
necessary

necessary precaution, imposed by the rocky nature of their country, and by the mimofas with which it is covered. This tree bears a great number of prickles, so that the earth around it is always strewed with them; and it is to prevent their feet from being wounded by them that they habituate themselves to the use of sandals.

As every novelty in dress among strangers appears almost always ridiculous, my people, accustomed to go bare-footed, considered this as altogether singular; and, to distinguish the new horde from all those we had before seen, they called them the horde of the sandal-bearers.

Less numerous than the former, it consisted only of two hundred individuals. They had also fewer cattle; both because the soil, on account of its poverty, afforded little pasturage, and because the Houzouanas made frequent incursions into their territory to plunder them. Not long before my arrival, they had carried off thirty oxen; and, though the chief had armed all his people to endeavour to recover them, he had been able to retake only six; and these even were so severely wounded with arrows and assagays, that it was necessary to  
kill



kill them on the spot, and to carry them to the kraal in pieces for provision.

Notwithstanding their poverty, these savages displayed the disinterestedness and generosity peculiar to their nation. Though I had distributed among them, in presents, only a few paltry articles, they brought every evening to my camp a considerable quantity of milk. During the time I spent among them, which was eight days (because, the mimosas being in full blossom, I found thereon many insects and birds), some followed me to the chace with a view of rendering me any little service in their power, and others ran every where about the neighbourhood to procure me insects. On my part, I made it my duty and a pleasure to oblige them. My marksmen went out to hunt for them rhinoceroses and elephants; and though they were not able, during my whole stay, to get near one of these shy animals, they killed nearly a score of antelopes, and several buffaloes, the greater part of which were given up to the horde. The buffaloes were exactly of the same kind as those we had killed on the eastern coast. They  
were

were only much larger ; but their flesh being leaner was less delicate.

My own excursions also proved successful ; and I found for my collection two rare species of birds. One of them was the roller, known under the name of the Senegal roller ; the other the rose-coloured bee-eater, called the Nubian bee-eater. By adding to the denomination of these birds the name of the country where they are found, naturalists, doubtless, did not mean to assert that they exist no where else ; but it was there probably they were first discovered, though, like many others which bear the names of countries, they may be met with in a different part of the globe.

Buffaloes were so common in this district, that they came and fed quietly at a little distance from my camp ; but, when we attempted to approach them, they betook themselves to flight, and retired to the woods. This suspicious and haggard animal carefully avoids danger, and it is only when attacked and obliged to defend himself that he seems to be sensible of the immense strength which nature has bestowed upon him.

With

With regard to giraffes, none now exist in this district, or in those I had quitted. A few old men, however, assured me that in their youth they had seen some here; and, from the description they gave of them, it appeared as if they spoke truth. I do not know why the case is different at present; but I conclude from the circumstance, that, if there are animals which occupy a great latitude of country, there are others that can live only in a very narrow zone.

What principally engaged the attention of my Kabobiqua horde was a dread of the Houzouanas. From morning to night I heard them pronounce nothing but the word Houzouana. If they desired my interpreters to say any thing to me, it always related to the hostilities or robberies of these people.

That active nation, more dreaded than they ought to be, had an establishment at the distance of about twenty leagues towards the north, and occupied a chain of mountains extending from north to east. As the barrenness of the soil which they possessed prevented them from forming regular and numerous hordes, they divided themselves into small

VOL. III. I bodies,

bodies, more or less considerable, according to places and circumstances; and, as the same cause often reduced them to a great scarcity of provisions, they made incursions into the territories of their neighbours, and carried off their flocks. These plunderers, living by rapine, are so much feared in the whole neighbourhood on account of their valour, that a few of them are sufficient to put to flight a whole horde of two hundred men completely armed; and if the party who have been robbed follow them, when they retire with their booty, it is rather to assure themselves of their retreat than to attack them.

The Kabobiqua horde itself, though belonging to a nation more warlike than any of the other tribes around, were equally timid in regard to the Houzouanas. Taught from their infancy to consider them as formidable, they thought resistance useless, and took no precautions to enable them either to prevent or repel their attacks.

They had, however, recently concluded a treaty of peace with the nearest division; and, in order to ensure tranquillity, had engaged to pay them annually a certain number of cattle.

This



This bears some resemblance to a commencement of civilization ; but these shameful and humiliating conditions were broken almost as soon as concluded. The Houzouanas of the more distant divisions pretended, that the Kabobiquas had not entered into the treaty without a view to advantage ; and that they would consequently continue their hostilities and depredations. Even the party which had accepted the peace was supposed to countenance their incursions, to inform them of the most favourable moments, and to share in the fruits of these plundering expeditions.

Thus every thing conspires to prove what man is in the solitary state, and what he is destined to become when he begins to combine in groupes, and to feel on all sides the vicinity of his fellow men.

When the chief saw the effect of my fuses, and was sensible how far such arms rendered me superior to his enemies, he endeavoured to animate me against them, and to interest me in his quarrel. Desirous of being acquainted with and visiting that nation, I often interrogated him respecting it, and requested information ; but he answered all my questions

either by advice or complaints, the visible intention of which was to irritate me against it.

He apprehended, however, on the other hand, that afterwards, when I should be gone, the Houzouanas might come and wreak their vengeance on his horde, for having directed me to their residence, and armed me against them. Accordingly, employing my interpreters, sometimes to inspire me with an envenomed hatred against these plunderers, and sometimes to advise me not to advance farther, his mind seemed to be continually at variance with itself. He was ignorant that the different tribes through whose territories I had passed spoke to me of them with the same terror, and that all his discourse produced no other effect than to increase my desire of knowing them.

With my numerous caravan, my distant and frequent hunting excursions, and the multiplicity of my nocturnal fires, I could not remain long unknown to so wandering a people. I entertained no doubt that, in the course of their roving, they must already have observed me; and that if they had not yet shown themselves, it was because the noise of my fire-arms, which resounded night and

I day,

day, had checked their inclination to attack me.

What they were to the Kabobiquas, I was to them ; and this state of terror into which they were thrown gave me no little uneasiness ; because, by keeping them at a distance, it prevented me from having an opportunity of knowing them. Whatever superiority the nature of my arms might give me, I had no intention of abusing it ; every species of insult being contrary to my principles. To execute the plan of travels I had formed required many friends ; I had every where endeavoured so to act as to procure them ; and I was fully convinced that the Houzouanas, so much dreaded and so much decried, would be equally among the number.

My people, however, were of a different opinion. By my conversations with the chief, they learned my design ; for, as I was obliged to employ four different interpreters, it could be no secret.

When it was known through the camp, I observed symptoms of universal alarm ; the men and women talked to each other with apparent uneasiness ; and the different tribes

assembled and held conferences together.— Though I understood nothing of their discourse, the mysterious manner in which they conducted themselves, and the restless air of their countenances, announced a storm, or, in other words, that a conspiracy was on the point of bursting out.

The Nimiquas, being the most timid, were the first to explain their sentiments; and, on my part, I had reason to be glad that the plot began to shew itself by the declaration of these poltroons, destitute alike of spirit and energy. They came to inform me, that they would neither consent to enter a country of which none of my company had any knowledge, nor expose themselves to the attacks of a nation which every other nation held in horror; and that they would consequently leave me, if I persisted in my resolution.

I made to their speech no other reply than by a burst of laughter; and, taking them at their word, gave them leave to depart that moment, well assured that they had not the courage to put their threat in execution: because, in order to return, they had to traverse countries infested by the Boshmen, through which  
they



they would never venture to pass alone. They were compelled, therefore, to remain under my protection, and by their excessive cowardice were reduced to the necessity of suffering themselves to be conducted wherever I might choose to lead them. The case was precisely the same with all their companions.

Each band, however, came to notify their departure; but, when they ought to have separated from me, none of them durst move. So great was their terror, that had they even been advanced on their journey, leaving the Houzouanas behind them, they would still have been afraid of being attacked by these people.

My Cape Hottentots, though equally cowardly, concealed their timidity with more art: but respecting them I had other causes of uneasiness. Accustomed to an indolent life in the colonies, and continually regretting the loss of certain conveniences of which they found themselves deprived, they were by no means calculated for enduring fatigues similar to those which it was necessary for us to support. Their health was affected by the difference of the climate into which they had

been removed; and if I had not taken the precaution to make a long stay at each of the stations where I halted, they would not have been able to perform the journey, and must one after another have perished on the way.

This new plan alarmed them more than any preceding one: but, as they possessed a greater share of acuteness than their comrades, and were consequently less free and open, they had address enough to conceal their dissimilarity under the most specious pretences. To speak to me of the Houzouanas would have been imprudently betraying themselves; they did not even so much as pronounce their name; but, affecting to shew themselves good fathers and good husbands, they reminded me, with feigned tenderness, of their wives and children, whom they would perhaps have beaten had they been near them. They talked also of their fatigues and their health; and, above all, of the local and particular obstacles which would arise in the execution of my project.

Could I have believed the people of the horde, I had indeed to traverse a desert which would  
require

require a journey of five days, and in which I should find no kind of food or refreshment, either for my people or my animals; not the smallest trace of vegetation; not even vegetative earth. It was only, they said, a vast ocean of sand, where it was impossible to move one step without sinking up to the knees; and this sand, moveable and as light as dust, was so fine that we should run the risk of being smothered upon occasion of the least wind, if we did not perish by thirst, hunger, fatigue, and distress, before we had accomplished half the way.

This discouraging intelligence was confirmed, in appearance, by the conduct of the Kabobiquas themselves. Notwithstanding the request of their chief, notwithstanding the temptation of the presents I offered them, not a single individual of the horde would consent to serve me as a guide. This refusal, however, did not alarm me. Whatever terrifying aspect it wore, I ascribed it to the fear with which these despicable poltroons were possessed, that, by consenting, they should certainly deliver themselves into the hands of the Houzouanas. The more they persisted in representing

senting the country as extraordinary, the more was I inflamed with a desire of visiting it. I saw there, in my mind's eye, new objects of natural history, discoveries of importance to commerce ; and I supposed that it would furnish me with details proper to awaken curiosity, and the more singular as no one before me had ever had an opportunity of becoming acquainted with them.

With regard to the frightful accounts that had been given me, I saw nothing in them but exaggerated tales, which, passing successively through the mouths of my different interpreters, were enlarged in proportion to the fear of each. And after all, as the Houzouanas advanced as far as the horde to plunder it, I might as well go to them, as suffer them to come to me : there was no more danger in the one case than in the other.

I confess, however, that what I had heard respecting the nature of the soil did not appear to be entirely void of foundation. In the course of my journey to the habitation of the Sandal-bearers, when I turned towards the wood I found the ground so thickly covered with a greyish dust, that it concealed not only  
the



the soil, but even the grafs and the pebbles. This uncommon phenomenon struck me too much not to be observed with attention, and it brought to my mind certain accounts which I had formerly read, and gave rise to reflections, the result of which appeared to me interesting.

According to the learned traveller Haffelquist,  
“ there is no country in the world, if we ex-  
“ cept Poland, that contains in its bosom such  
“ a large quantity of common salt as Egypt.  
“ The bottom of the soil is scarcely composed  
“ of any thing else than mountains of it . . . If  
“ pits be dug at certain distances, they yield a  
“ reddish salt, mixed with calcareous earth,  
“ called by the Egyptians of the present day  
“ *natron* . . . They consider wells of fresh water  
“ as a miracle . . . Without the assistance of the  
“ Nile, Egypt would be uninhabitable; as,  
“ from the same cause, is a part of Eastern  
“ Arabia . . . Even the blackest soil contains  
“ abundance of saline particles; as is proved,  
“ every morning before sun-rise, by the quan-  
“ tity of white salt with which the surface of  
“ it is covered, almost in the same manner as  
“ one sees in Sweden, in the end of autumn,  
“ the

“ the earth covered with hoar frost, or a thin  
“ coat of snow.” The author adds, “ A soil  
“ impregnated with salt must produce salu-  
“ ginous plants ; and, indeed, such are found in  
“ Egypt, and in greater number than in any  
“ other part of the Levant.”

Egypt is situated on the north side of the tropic of Cancer, and I found myself near that of Capricorn ; that is to say, at the same distance from the equator. What Hasselquist had taught me respecting the northern part of Africa, I found to be the case with the southern under the same latitude, which struck me with astonishment. I wondered why nature presented such an evident resemblance in two countries, distant almost twelve hundred leagues, though lying under the same parallels.

I am no chemist, and I have often had occasion to regret my deficiency in that respect. It is much to be wished, that in travellers every branch of useful knowledge were united ; but each is generally directed in his studies by a taste so predominant as almost to exclude every other ; and, as a naturalist, I had abandoned myself entirely to the animal kingdom. Every  
thing,

thing, however, had shewn me, without being a chemist, the same immense quantity of common salt here which Hasselquist observed in Egypt; and I thought even that I began to find also natron.

In advancing from the Cape, I had constantly remarked, that the water, which at first was a little brackish, became more and more impregnated with salt as I approached towards the equator. Nothing was so uncommon as water perfectly sweet; for even the torrents were considerably saltish. Scarcely had a pool been heated by the sun, when I saw formed upon it a crust of hard crystallized salt. Every thing was salt, the plants not excepted; and according as the structure of their fibres was more or less favourable to the infiltration of salt, each of them was more or less acrid.

Among the saluginous plants of Egypt, Hasselquist reckons salt-wort, and particularly several kinds of chenopodium\* and mesembryanthemum†; and these vegetables are indigenous also in the southern part of Africa,

\* Goose-foot.

† Fig-marygold.

and very abundant, especially in the country of the Kabobiquas.

In fine, we are informed by all travellers, that the Egyptians, notwithstanding the salubrity of their climate, are subject to blindness; a melancholy infirmity, which must be principally ascribed to the saline dust which is so frequently driven into their eyes by the wind: and there were also many blind persons in the countries of which I speak. I saw none any where else; whereas all the inhabitants here were more or less affected with a disorder of the eyes.

This striking resemblance between two countries, separated by the whole breadth of the torrid zone, could not fail to excite my curiosity. I conjectured that the dust with which I saw the plain covered was natron; I imagined that I should find still more as I advanced farther into the country; and the soil without vegetation, of which the Sandal-bearers had spoken, strengthened this conjecture, and added one motive more to those I already felt for carrying my intended project into execution.

The opposition made to it by my people  
presented



presented nothing to my view capable of suspending it. Accustomed to their petty insurrections, I was no way intimidated; and I laughed equally at the objections and surly discontent of some, as at the cowardice and doleful lamentations of others.

For the moment, I considered my Hottentots only as children, who whine and cry when they are separated from their nurse. Since it had become a part of my plan to be accompanied and announced by the savages of one horde to those of another, they were the part of my company with which I could best dispense. This plan was indeed so easy and so economical, and my Cape Hottentots were now so useless and even so burdensome, that I perhaps should have congratulated myself upon being rid of them.

Besides, the manner in which I now travelled required neither so many people nor the same preparation. I had commenced my journey with waggons: a method that was attended with numberless inconveniencies.

Independently of accidents and delays, which they too often occasioned, and of the impossibility of repairing them in case they should

break, a considerable and superfluous expence was necessary to support them and to keep them in motion. They required a provision of tools and of iron; a great number of men to conduct them and to look after the cattle; and, above all, double relays—an object attended with much cost, and extremely difficult to be procured; because, at a certain distance from the colonies, it was not easy to find cattle ready trained for the draught. I have already mentioned with how much trouble and difficulty I was able to procure, among the snowy mountains of Camis, a few wretched oxen, which I soon saw perish on the road without being of any use to me.

When I left my camp on the banks of Orange-River, I had been particularly anxious to be assured whether it would be possible for my carriages to follow me in my future course. I also proposed to myself to sound, in some measure, different savage nations, to try their character, and endeavour to learn how far I could trust myself to them, and rely on their assistance. The knowledge of these two points was absolutely necessary to enable me to continue my journey: without  
it

it I could hope for no success; and I should perhaps have been stopped at the very first step.

My second trial had answered to my wishes. Wherever I went, I found friends, and met with trusty men, who conducted me from one horde to another, and whose service and aid I purchased for mere trifles. Free as the air, I depended on no one. The people thus acquired, opposed to my will neither difficulties, delay, nor refusal; and every thing seemed to announce to me that I might traverse all Africa.

With regard to my waggons, it was in vain to think of them. In proportion as you advance from the colonies towards the tropic, the country becomes more and more rugged and uneven. Nothing is seen on all sides but mountains and rocks, the defiles of which are for the most part as steep as precipices, and consequently impassable for wheel-carriages.

I saw myself reduced, therefore, to the necessity of travelling with oxen of burden—a method much less embarrassing and infinitely more economical; since, by requiring fewer cattle, I had no need to carry with me useless re-

lays ; and at the same time I was certain of every where finding such as I had occasion for.

In consequence of my plan to visit the Houzouanas, I had still a third trial to make. As none of the Sandal-bearers would serve me as guides, the means in which I confided, and which had hitherto succeeded, of keeping up a communication from one horde to another suddenly failed me. Their refusal interrupted the chain of my correspondence ; and I was obliged to devise some method of supplying this want, and of re-establishing it myself. If I should be able to make my way without them to the people whom they had painted to me in colours so black, and if I should succeed in conciliating their friendship, I had nothing more to fear : there was no nation with which I might not hope to become acquainted ; and the end and object of my journey would thus be previously ensured.

My excursion to the Houzouanas, however, could be only of short duration ; and it was even become impossible for me to proceed beyond that nation. As I had proposed to quit my camp at Orange-River but for a few months, I had taken  
with



with me a small quantity only of merchandise, which was much lessened by circumstances, and almost entirely exhausted. And what hope could I have of gaining friends when I had no longer presents to make them ?

I know that the disposition of the savage is naturally good ; that is to say, he will do injury to no individual, if that individual does no injury to him : and perhaps even gratuitous services may be obtained from him, for interest is by no means his ruling passion. If he desire with avidity the objects that are shewn him, it is rather through childish curiosity than any real want. Nevertheless, we must not expect to receive every kind of assistance, unless we hold out to him the attraction of reward.

Another reason which urged me to hasten my return to Orange-River, was the state in which I had left my camp. My giraffe, exposed upon stakes, might spoil ; my collections, the fruit of eleven months labour, ran the same risk ; and I had to expect from Swanepoel more good-will than real care. By committing to his charge the general inspection of my caravan, I had assigned to him an

employment which, suited to his age, required but little fatigue. He was accustomed to this inactive kind of life; for, when he had swept my tent, and made my coffee or my tea, he conceived himself to have discharged the duties of the whole day.

In such a character, I had little reason to expect that activity which would be required to keep my camp in order during my long absence. Besides, who could insure the life of an old man! And, even if he should only be sick, what cause should I have for alarm respecting the fruits of so much labour!

In the midst of this perplexity, and these wavering determinations, occasioned by the uncertainty of the means to carry them into execution, I resolved to consult my faithful Klaas. When under embarrassing circumstances, this worthy Hottentot was generally my counsellor; and I always found that he possessed a share of good sense equal to his attachment and courage. I, therefore, communicated to him my reflections, my new plans, and told him the difficulties as well as the hopes with which I foresaw they would be attended.

He listened with great attention ; and then, striking his hand against mine, said, that he agreed with me respecting my new arrangement, and particularly my design of travelling in future with oxen of burden only. “ With regard,” added he, “ to your desire of paying a visit to the Houzouanas, I have no occasion to assure you I am ready this instant to depart. You know that, wherever you may choose to go, Klaas will follow you faithfully and with pleasure ; but if you think it necessary, as I do, to have a few trusty persons along with us, I can answer for five of my comrades, upon whom you may rely, even to death, as firmly as you may upon me.”

This protestation of attachment from a man of approved zeal, and the assurance he gave me of the courage and resolution of his comrades, afforded me so much satisfaction, that, in the first transports of my joy, I was almost tempted to dismiss all those who were of no use to me, and to set out that very moment. A return of reflection, however, checked me ; I saw that the delay of half a day would be of advantage to make preparation. I consequently put off my departure till the next

K 3

morning ;

morning; and, giving orders to the five men recommended by Klaas to hold themselves in readiness to start early, I declared to the rest that I would leave them masters of their conduct; but that I was ready, nevertheless, to admit into my company such as might have the courage to follow me.

My new plan was to visit the Houzouanas, and to return to my camp at Orange-River, not by the route I had pursued in coming hither, but by any other which might give me an opportunity of becoming acquainted with new hordes. When I arrived at the camp, I intended to resume my waggons, to proceed by a different road to the Cape, where I meant to leave them, and to begin, at a better chosen period and only with oxen of burden, a third journey, in which I expected more success than in my second; and which I was desirous of undertaking through the countries situated on the east of the Camis.

To execute this plan, I foresaw that I should have occasion for the services of the Houzouanas; and on that account I was anxious to put them to the test, and endeavour to secure their friendship. Besides, my new mode of travelling,



travelling, lighter as well as more commodious, and at the same time less tedious, seemed likely to furnish me with more abundant resources, and to facilitate discoveries, with the hopes of which my imagination was already enchanted.

At break of day, my whole caravan was in readiness to depart. During the night, the Greater Nimiquas held a council together, and, as I foresaw, resolved to accompany me, not through courage or attachment, but from mere cowardice, and a dread of being attacked by the Boshmen, if they attempted to return without an escort.

My Hottentots, who thought themselves much superior to the Greater Nimiquas, and who were ashamed to appear less courageous, affected to shew still more ardour; and their example induced the rest of the company to imitate them. My Koraquas, Kaminouquas, Lesser Nimiquas, and the people of Baster's horde, all vied with each other in eagerness to be of the party, and each strove who should shew the greatest impatience to depart. The Sandal-bearers, whose accounts had excited so much terror, were now objects of laughter:

they became the subject of universal ridicule; and it was said, that they had refused to accompany me, because they were afraid to wet or spoil their sandals.

Before I thought of departing, I took care to get from them such information as they were able to give me respecting the route I ought to pursue. They told me that, after marching a day or two towards the north, I should find a vast plain terminated on the east by a chain of mountains; that I must cross this plain; and that among the rocks of the mountains I should find the establishment of the Houzouanas of whom they had spoken.

Agreeably to these instructions I proceeded towards the east; and we halted about noon on the borders of a salt lake, in which we found a crystallized sheet of salt. It had probably been formed and had floated at the surface; but the storm, a few days before, had carried thither so much rain, that it was now depressed, and situated between the two waters.

While my people were sitting on the bank of this lake, getting ready for dinner, they observed four men, at a distance, crossing the plain. At this sight they were almost petrified with

with terror; they cried out immediately that they were Houzouanas; and, though they were themselves ten or twelve to one, they were already afraid of being attacked. The courage displayed in the morning vanished in an instant; the whole company suddenly lost their appetite; and I know not what might have been the consequence of this general alarm, had not Klaas hastened as expeditiously as possible to inform me of what was passing.

Having applied my perspective glass to my eye, to examine the four strangers, I perceived them to be men apparently of an extraordinary size; whereas the Houzouanas, according to the account which I had heard, were little better than pigmies, not exceeding at most four feet and a half in height. I fired some shots, in order that they might observe us—which they soon did; but the reports alarmed them, and they disappeared in an instant.

Among the inconveniencies of this journey, there was one respecting which the Sandal-bearers had given me no intimation. The ground over which we were obliged to travel was hollow and swelled up; so that, like a piece of pastry exposed to too violent a heat,  
it

it formed a crust separated from the soil, and might not only have concealed innumerable families of little animals, but would have allowed them to proceed several leagues, in all directions, between the two strata.

The greater part of my oxen, and those particularly that were heavily loaded, sunk half a foot deep at every step; and these continual falls tormented and rendered them almost furious. We ourselves were not exempted from the same accidents. In a moment when we least expected it, the ground would give way under us; and it may be readily conceived how much we must be fatigued and put out of patience by so incommodious a march.

To this another inconvenience, still more insupportable and discouraging, was added. I mean that of the saline crystallization, which, as it lay every where dispersed, and was struck upon by the fervid rays of the sun, scorched us by its burning reverberation, at the same time that its reflection dazzled us. The light dust by which it was covered, and which formed a part of it, was raised around us by the smallest breath of wind: we ourselves also, by the motion necessary in walking, ex-  
cited



cited thick clouds of it, which flew into our faces, and inflamed our eyes; and, as we were obliged to inspire it in breathing, our nostrils became ulcerated by it. Millions of gnats could not have been more intolerable. Our lips even were attacked by it, and in such a manner that the blood started from them when we made the least effort to speak; so that to pronounce a sentence was next to torture.

To escape this scourge, I made preparations after dinner for resuming my journey; but a storm that came on suspended our march, and obliged us to pass the night near the lake.

This disappointment, however, was attended with some benefit to my people. "Necessity," says a French poet, "is the mother of invention." In the journey of the morning, they had suffered extremely from the heat of the sun. To secure themselves from it in future, they converted all the dried sheep and antelopes' skins which they had in their possession into round hats; which, being drawn down over the ears, and tied with thongs under the chin, gave them a ridiculous kind of resemblance to the Alsacians in the neighbourhood of Strasbourg,

burgh, when they go into the fields to weed their pulse and their tobacco.

The acute pains which I experienced in my eyes and throat, and the dread of experiencing others still more dangerous, induced me also to use some precautions. It was not, like my people, to shelter my head; for my hat, flapped and closely stuck round with ostrich feathers, was in that respect a sufficient defence; but I wished to make a screen to preserve my eyes from the dazzling reverberation of the sun, and that might serve at the same time to keep off those clouds of caustic dust by which my face was ulcerated.

With this view, I formed of wire the skeleton of a small umbrella, which I covered with a handkerchief, and which, being sufficiently light that it could in no manner fatigue me, became exceedingly useful. My people thought it so commodious, that they all wished to imitate it; and, changing the form of the skins which they had placed upon their heads, they transformed them into umbrellas. These articles were awkwardly made, I allow; but they had their advantage, and were a great resource to us on our journey.

Some

Some of my people, however, fell upon an invention still more ridiculous. They affixed to some poles the large skin of a buffalo, and carried it above their heads in the form of a canopy.

The women alone supported with courage the extreme fatigue of so extraordinary a journey. Nothing could discompose their good humour. Being of a cheerful disposition, and always sportful, they indulged in pleasantries at the expence of the men and their ridiculous appearance. For me, I was on foot like the women, and braved every fatigue; both that I might spare my horses, and not hazard my life upon animals which, frequently stumbling and falling on their knees, would infallibly have broken my neck. Under the present circumstances, the indefatigable courage of the women was an invaluable advantage. By exciting their shame, they acted as a spur on the indolence and backwardness of the men, who, ignorant of the particular motives of my journey, considered it only as the effects of extravagant temerity.

In the course of the day we experienced, notwithstanding our precautions and our um-

brellas, an increase of our sufferings. Owing either to the action of the excessive heat, or to the effect of the climate or the saline dust, we were seized with frequent bleedings at the nose and intolerable pains in the head.

A fever, which seemed to accompany these symptoms, brought on, what my Hottentots had never experienced, and what I also felt for the first time, a confusion of sight and giddiness, or rather a real delirium. We thought we saw before us waggons, towns or kraals, numerous flocks, and, in short, a thousand different objects, which changed their form and produced others, in proportion as we advanced.

A remarkable circumstance, which filled us with alarm, and made us sensible of the danger of our situation, was, that none of us saw the same thing; and that what to one was a mountain was a river to another. Soon, however, we learned to mistrust these fantastical visions; and, being assured by experience that they were only imaginary, we no longer believed in their reality.

The effect, indeed, was not unremitted. At some moments it entirely ceased, and permitted  
our



our eyes to see objects as they really existed. At others, on the contrary, our visual faculty was suddenly annihilated, we experienced a temporary loss of sight, and for some minutes remained as it were blind.

All these contradictory effects, which destroyed each other, were by my people ascribed to forcery. For my part, I considered them as occasioned principally by the action of the sun; for, though it was upwards of seven weeks since it had quitted the tropic, and consequently, in advancing towards the equator, it darted upon us only oblique rays, it had nevertheless so heated the earth, and the atmosphere was so scorching, that the thermometer remained constantly above 100°.

Whatever may have been the cause of our sufferings, it had an influence on my constitution. Since that period I have been subject to hemorrhages and head-achs, to which I was before a stranger, and with which, perhaps, I shall be occasionally attacked during the remainder of my life.

I have as yet said nothing of the tormenting thirst to which we were condemned during the whole journey. We, indeed, found  
every

every where abundance of water, left by the storm the preceding evening; but the earth which it had washed away in its course made it so salt that it was impossible to drink it. My cattle, however, accustomed to brackish springs, did not reject it: which was a fortunate circumstance. For my part, I would rather have swallowed so much brine. However, to our extreme joy, we found here and there in the cavities of the rocks some small pools formed by the rain, the water of which was drinkable.

On the third day, I at length distinguished the plain and the mountains which had been described to me by the Sandal-bearers. When I make use of the word plain, the reader must not affix to it the strict meaning which it has in the French language. In Africa, this name is given to certain spaces which, surrounded by high mountains, present only rocks and hills of much less size, by which they are intersected.

We advanced into this pretended plain, having in front the mountains said to be the retreat of the Houzouanas. They were only about five or six leagues distant, and appeared

to me to extend from south to north farther than the eye could reach. I was unwilling, however, to entangle myself among them at hazard.

On the other hand, it was impossible for me to dispatch some of my Hottentots before, according to my usual custom, to announce my approach, and to prepare the minds of the Houzouanas for my arrival. Had I made such a proposal to any of them, they would have formally refused me. I was loth even to put the attachment of Klaas to so great a trial, whatever readiness he had hitherto shewn to obey me. In this embarrassment I could depend only on myself, and wait the circumstances that might arise to determine my conduct.

I halted, therefore, and ordered my encampment to be formed, in hopes that I should discover, during the night, the fires lighted by the Houzouanas in their mountains. These signals, I concluded, would point out to me the spots which they inhabited, and, by directing my route, prevent me from losing my way. It was, however, necessary that I should not be discovered by them, and that conse-

quently no fires should be kindled in my camp.

But this measure was become impracticable. On my arrival I had seen considerable herds of zebras. I had seen also other herds, still more numerous, of the species of gnou, already mentioned ; and I knew that such a number of wild quadrupeds must necessarily attract beasts of prey. How then could I run the risk of passing a night without fires in a strange country, and in all probability infested by lions and tigers ?

Abandoning, therefore, my first design, I began to examine the neighbourhood, making some of my people also patrol around, in order to be assured that there were no enemies near us. I then, at the close of the day, gave orders that several large fires should be kindled, and that they should be multiplied as much as possible, disposing them, however, in such a manner that they might enable us to distinguish, at a distance, if any thing dangerous should appear.

To overawe the Houzouanas, in case any of them should accidentally perceive us, I ordered a general discharge of musquetry ; and I

took



took care from time to time to fire several shots during the night.

In the course of the night, I observed at a distance towards the south a very large fire, which, by its extent, appeared to be a conflagration of dry grass on the sides of the mountains, and much nearer before us, to the west, three others, which I supposed to be signals. The latter seemed to announce that I was in the neighbourhood of a horde, either of the Houzouanas or of some other nation; and I consequently resolved, as soon as day should appear, to advance towards the mountains.

When about to depart, I found myself once more retarded by the timidity of my people, who, being again seized with their former terror, were afraid to penetrate farther. When we quitted the horde of the Sandal-bearers, the danger had appeared only at a distance, in perspective, and they had braved it; but now, when they beheld it near and magnified by imagination, it entirely damped their courage.

My patroles, my fires, and those precautions for our safety which I had thought proper to employ during the night, had served

only to augment their terror. They began to apprehend, that I wished to advance even beyond the country of the Houzouanas. They accused Klaas of having deceived the whole company, by making them believe that my intention was to return to my camp at Orange-River, after I had visited that nation, while all my preparations seemed to announce plans perfectly the reverse; and this reasoning was not destitute of probability, as I had hitherto said nothing respecting the proximity of my return.

Such was the still increasing embarrassment of my situation. The great number of persons who were in my suite, their laziness, their pusillanimity, and their want of subordination, were continually raising up obstacles, which stopped my progress, and thwarted my designs. Several times had I already formed a resolution to disembarraas myself from them, and to continue my journey with Klaas only, and the four men for whose fidelity he had pledged himself; and I again found myself reduced to the necessity of adopting it.

Before I proceeded, however, to this extremity, I was desirous to assure them myself of my  
speedy

speedy return, and thus to discharge the promise made them by Klaas. I declared then that, after having visited the Houzouanas and traversed their mountains, I would proceed back by the south-west, which I pointed out to them, either to the sea or the mouth of Fish-River; and that then, advancing up its course till we found a ford at which to cross it, I would repair to my camp at Orange-River.

Such a plan was calculated to excite alarm; by the long winding circuit which it announced. But it calmed the simple personages I had to deal with, who had no idea of its extent, and who, accustomed to see the sun rise and set every day without reflecting on his progress, and without thinking of to-morrow, knew nothing of this western route, and saw in it only the means of returning.

My words, indeed, were not able to rouse their depressed courage; but they brought back to their hearts the illusion of hope: and it was my business to take advantage of their disposition to accomplish my views. When I gave the signal for our departure, every thing was in motion in my camp as usual;

but no one shewed that ardour of obedience which half ensures success. My people followed me, it is true, and this is all I can say; but I foresaw, from the slowness of their motions, that it would be difficult to prolong the delusion I had created.

I had no hopes of meeting with good water, till I should reach the bottom of the mountains; but my people, in their terror, wandered so often from our route, in order to gain time and retard the moment of our arrival, that they happened to find some. I was obliged, therefore, to halt and encamp near it, though we had travelled as yet only four leagues.

During the night, we observed the same fires as we had seen the evening before; and at break of day I resolved to go out myself on discovery, carrying with me a few presents.

On this occasion I did not take even Klaas along with me: he was become too necessary in my camp; and I left him behind me that, in case of alarm, he might keep together and encourage my people: but I was accompanied by four men who voluntarily offered their services, and who, like myself, were completely armed.



At first I directed my course, as much as the ravines and defiles would permit, towards the place where we had observed the fires. Having arrived with great caution at the bottom of the mountains, I found it necessary to ascend in a northern direction, as I perceived that the windings had made us descend too low.

The space traversed by these circuitous marches presented only to my view, rocks piled one upon another, and crowned with peaks still more elevated. The aspect of them was truly hideous ; and, but for some miserable and stunted shrubs which here and there displayed their melancholy vegetation, I should have beheld nothing but the dreary picture of dead and inanimate nature. The horror of this desert was still increased by the silence which prevailed around. We heard only at certain distances the shrill cry of some damantelopes, and the discordant noise of birds of prey, with which the ear was equally distressed.

I was apprehensive, lest the mistake which had led us astray should expose us to some disagreeable adventure : by the happiest chance, however, it led to the discovery of what

with so much eagerness and uncertainty I was searching for.

In traversing the defiles, we perceived the fresh traces of human feet. They conducted us towards some rocks, which we clambered up; and we found there warm ashes and a few remains of coals still burning. It was evident, that fires had been kindled there during the night; and the vestiges still subsisting announced to us, that the country was inhabited; and that the objects of our pursuit could be at no great distance.

Notwithstanding all the precautions we had hitherto taken, this discovery induced us to double our attention. In short, after marching some time, we arrived at a rivulet which issued from the entrance of a narrow defile. On its banks some cows were feeding; and at the distance of four hundred paces farther towards the defile, stood a certain number of huts, the habitations of the Houzouanas.

At the moment of our arrival, none of them were abroad but the women, who, on perceiving us, sent forth a cry of alarm. Upon this signal, the men came out of their huts,  
armed

armed with bows and arrows; and the whole troop, entering the defile, posted themselves on a small eminence, from which they watched our conduct with steadiness and assurance, in order to determine thereby what conduct they should pursue.

At the distance at which I stood, I had no hopes of making them hear me: and, besides, what could I say to people with whose language I was totally unacquainted? I resolved, therefore, to employ one which I supposed they might comprehend; and I made, as did also my companions, every sign of friendship that the circumstances of the moment suggested. This language, however, was new to them: they seemed not to understand it; and I found myself reduced to the necessity of trying the only one likely to be intelligible, I mean that of presents.

I advanced then towards their huts; but I found them all empty, except one in which there was a little dog. At the entrance of another lay a heap of reeds, and a few sharpened bones, destined, no doubt, for making arrows. Imitating the manner of those who attract domestic animals by placing before them

them some dainty, I deposited, near the reeds, a small quantity of tobacco and some glass beads, and then returned to my former station.

While I was thus employed, they had removed to a greater distance; but, when I retired, they again drew near, and at length came to the huts, and took up the present I had left there.

The attention with which they examined it, and the pleasure it seemed to afford them, led me to believe that, after these preliminaries of friendship, I might venture to accost them. I advanced therefore once more, followed by my company; but they retired in the same manner as before.

They removed, indeed, to a greater distance than at first; but I remarked that they seemed to be deliberating together, and I flattered myself that they would not delay to enter into a conference with me. I thought proper, therefore, to make another attempt; and taking a new present of tobacco and beads, I held it up to them, that they might see it, and advanced towards them alone.

This mode of negotiation succeeded. One of the men left his companions, and, approaching  
ing



ing me, stopped at the distance of a hundred paces to ask who I was, and what I wanted. I remarked with surprise, that this man was black, while the rest of the horde, both men and women, were much less so than even the Hottentots. But what astonished me still more was to hear him address me in the Hottentot language. I replied in the same language, that I was a traveller who wished to be acquainted with the country he inhabited, and was desirous, if possible, to find friends in it.

He then came up to me ; and my four attendants, having advanced also, were as much astonished as I was to see a person of their own nation. They entered into conversation with him, assured him of the truth of what I had said, and gained so entirely his confidence, that he immediately made a sign to his companions to join him.

The women, more mistrustful and circumspect, remained in groups near the huts, waiting for the result of the conference, and watching us with an eye of curiosity. The men all flocked around us. I distributed among them the tobacco and beads which I had shewn them ; and these wolves, who had been  
painted

painted to me as so ferocious, seemed to be as harmless as lambs.

I had, however, no sooner rendered them tractable, than I was obliged to leave them. My march had taken up a great deal of my time, the day was far advanced, and I was apprehensive that, if I remained any longer, my absence might alarm my people; or that I should expose myself to the hazard of losing my way during the night, in a country with which I was totally unacquainted.

I told the Houzouanas, therefore, that I would return next morning, and encamp on the banks of their rivulet. I again assured them, that they would find in me a friend always ready to oblige and to defend them. I engaged that they should experience from my people neither insult nor injury; but I declared, at the same time, that, if they gave me the least cause of complaint, I would employ against them all my resources, and in that case they would find my strength far superior to theirs.

I employed the Hottentot as an interpreter to communicate to them these sentiments; and through the same medium I received a

very satisfactory answer. I observed that this man, besides the Hottentot language, spoke also pretty good Dutch. He offered very readily to serve me as guide to my camp, to pass the night there, and to return with me next morning to the horde. He was overjoyed to find countrymen with whom he could converse in his maternal tongue; and I was equally glad to find in him a confidence which contributed to strengthen mine. I accepted his offer, therefore, with gratitude, and we immediately set out.

My readers will not doubt, that my first care on the road was to ask him, by what adventure he had been transplanted among the Houzouanas. He informed me, that he was born in the neighbourhood of the Camis, and had lived several years subject to the company; but that, having been treated in various instances with injustice, he had deserted with a negro slave belonging to the same master, and, after wandering about for a long time, had at last sought an asylum and protection among the Houzouanas. The negro had died from the effect of a poisoned arrow, by which he was wounded in a skirmish the horde had been engaged in

in with a strange tribe. Being thus deprived of his companion, he continued to live with his protectors, and by his courage he was become in a manner their chief.

I excused his desertion; it appeared to me lawful and right; but I could not comprehend why he had preferred a residence among banditti, whose profession was robbery and murder. Having, somewhat mildly, reproached him on this account, he addressed me as follows:

“ The Houzouanas are by no means what  
“ you suppose them to be, murderers by pro-  
“ fession. If they sometimes shed blood, it is  
“ not from a thirst of carnage, but to make  
“ just reprisals that they take up arms. At-  
“ tacked and persecuted by surrounding na-  
“ tions, they have found themselves reduced to  
“ the necessity of flying to inaccessible places  
“ among the barren mountains, where no  
“ other people could exist.

“ If they find antelopes and damans to kill;  
“ if the nymphs of ants are abundant; or if  
“ their good fortune brings them plenty of lo-  
“ custs, they remain within the precincts of  
“ their rocks; but, if the provisions necessary  
“ to



“ to subsistence fail, the nations in their neigh-  
“ bourhood must suffer. From the summits of  
“ their mountains, they survey at a distance the  
“ countries around ; and, if they observe cat-  
“ tle, they make an incursion to carry them off,  
“ or slaughter them upon the spot, according  
“ to circumstances ; but though they rob they  
“ never kill, except to defend their lives, or  
“ by way of retaliation to revenge an ancient  
“ injury.

“ It happens sometimes, however, that after  
“ very fatiguing expeditions they return with-  
“ out booty ; either because the objects of their  
“ attack have disappeared, or because they  
“ have been repulsed and beaten. In such cases,  
“ the women, exasperated by hunger and the  
“ lamentation of their children crying for food,  
“ become almost furious with passion. Re-  
“ proaches, insult, and threats, are employed ;  
“ they wish to separate from such dastardly  
“ men, to quit husbands destitute of courage,  
“ and to seek others who will be more anxious  
“ to procure provision for them and their chil-  
“ dren. In short, having exhausted whatever  
“ rage or despair can suggest, they pull off  
“ their small apron of modesty, and beat their  
“ husbands

“ husbands about the head with it till their  
“ arms are weary of the exercise.

“ Of all the affronts which they can offer,  
“ this is the most insulting. Unable to with-  
“ stand it, the men in their turn become furi-  
“ ous. They put on their war-cap, a sort of  
“ helmet made with the skin that covers the  
“ neck of the hyæna, the long hair of which  
“ forms a crest that floats over the head, and,  
“ setting out like madmen, never return till  
“ they have succeeded in carrying off some  
“ cattle.

“ When they come back, their wives go to  
“ meet them, and extol their courage amidst  
“ the fondest caresses. In a word, nothing is  
“ then thought of but mirth and jollity ; and,  
“ till similar scenes are recalled by similar wants,  
“ past evils are forgotten.”

Such was the substance of the details by which my guide endeavoured to justify the conduct of the Houzouanas—a conduct rendered necessary by want, and sufficiently authorised by their quality of savages. With our laws, civilization, manners, and the prejudices we thence imbibe, we consider it as something monstrous to find, in the savage state, hordes  
of

of free-booters, who give themselves up to continual rapine, to war and its concomitant dangers, in order to avoid hunger and find the means of appeasing it. But which is, in reality, the greatest savage—he who has lands and flocks, who fixes himself to one spot, who is acquainted with barter and subsists by the practice of commerce; or he who trusts merely to his strength, and waits for the moment of need, before he thinks of procuring what he may have occasion for? Laws, civilization, and morals, must undoubtedly have the preference; but the evils which they often bring in their train infinitely diminish, in my eyes, the misfortune of inhabiting a desert and of being thereby ignorant of them.

When my Hottentot arrived at the camp, his presence occasioned a sort of stupor. Had he fallen from the clouds, he could not, in my opinion, have produced more astonishment. He was soon surrounded by my people, each wishing to know by what singular adventures he had got to such a distance from his native country. So highly was their curiosity excited that they never quitted him; and, after they had given him some refreshment, they em-

VOL. III,                      M                      ployed

ployed the remainder of the time till the moment of our departure, without suffering him to rest during the night even, in putting questions to him and hearing his replies.

Next morning I proceeded, as I had announced, to pitch my tent on the banks of the rivulet. In my way thither, I still observed that saline substance of which I have already spoken; but on the mountain it no longer existed, and I could discover no traces of it.

The return of the Hottentot freed the Houzouanas from their fear; and the accounts which he gave of my behaviour inspired them with the utmost confidence. Scarcely had I arranged my camp, when they all came in a friendly manner to visit me. You would have supposed that we had been long united by reciprocal sentiments of fraternity; but it was not thus with my people. The name Houzouana had struck their minds with so much dread, their prejudices were so deeply rooted, that they could not look at them without a panic; and, till the moment of our departure, they continued to behold them with the same horror.

What, during my first journey, had been the  
fear



fear they entertained of the Caffres, such in my second was that inspired by the Houzouanas ; and I had no more hope of curing it in the present than in the former instance. The savage, surrounded by enemies and dangers, must necessarily be mistrustful and suspicious. If, among the enemies he has to dread, there are some who are truly formidable, his mistrust is converted into terror. The name alone of these will make him tremble ; he gives credit to the most improbable tales and the most ridiculous fables that may be told respecting them ; and, being thus previously subjected by his timidity, he becomes an easy conquest. The first successful expedition is sufficient to establish the empire of one horde over all the rest. Such has been the fortune of the Houzouanas ; their name is transmitted with terror from mouth to mouth ; their renown is conveyed from district to district, even to the Cape, where the most absurd relations are propagated concerning them. Their wandering life gives to these relations additional credit ; the impossibility of knowing them doubles, in the eyes of the other savages, their real strength ; and they are believed to be numerous, because

they are seen always active, and take their enemies by surprise.

Their horde, very inconsiderable of itself, was still more so at this time, by the absence of a part of those who composed it. They had gone out, as they term it, to procure provision ; and there remained in the kraal twenty-seven men only, seven women, and a few children. These waited for the return of their companions, in order to quit their establishment, and repair in a body, by a south-west route, towards the mouth of Orange-River. Men, whose mode of life subjects them to the continual apprehension of being attacked, or who are frequently obliged to make distant excursions, cannot long inhabit the same spot. It was only in the course of their passing it, that they had settled near the rivulet ; and it was a fortunate circumstance for me that I fell in with them.

The Houzouanas are of low stature ; and a person five feet four inches in height is accounted among them very tall ; but in their little bodies, perfectly well proportioned, are united, with surprising strength and agility, a certain air of assurance, boldness, and haughtiness,



HOZOUANA MAN.







HEAD OF A HOUZOUANA MAN.



His hut in no-wise resembles that of the Hottentot. It appears as if cut vertically through the middle ; so that the hut of a Hottentot would make two of those of the Houzouanas. During their emigrations, they leave them standing, in order that, if any other horde of the same nation pass that way, they may make use of them. When on a journey, they have nothing to repose on but a mat suspended from two sticks, and placed in an inclined position. They often even sleep on the bare ground. A projecting rock is then sufficient to shelter them ; for every thing is suited to a people whose constitutions are proof against the severest fatigue. If, however, they stop any where to sojourn for a while, and find materials proper for constructing huts, they then form a kraal ; but they abandon it on their departure, as is the case with all the huts which they erect.

This custom of labouring for others of their tribe announces a social character and a benevolent disposition. They are, indeed, not only affectionate husbands and good fathers, but excellent companions. When they inhabit



a kraal, there is no such thing among them as private property; whatever they possess is in common. If two hordes of the same nation meet, the reception is on both sides friendly; they afford each other mutual protection, and confer reciprocal obligations. In short, they treat one another as brethren, though perhaps they are perfect strangers, and have never seen each other before.

Active and nimble by nature, the Houzouana considers it as amusement to climb mountains and the most elevated peaks; and their skill in this respect was very advantageous to me. The rivulet near which I encamped had a coppery taste and a nauseous smell, which rendered it impossible for me to drink the water. My cattle, accustomed to the bad water of the country, were satisfied with it: but I was afraid that it might injure my people; and I would, on that account, not permit them to use it. The Houzouanas had no milk to give me, as they possessed only a few wretched cows which they had plundered. Having asked them if they knew of any good spring in the neighbourhood, to  
which



which I could fend my company to procure a supply of water, they set out themselves in an instant, without making me a reply, clambered up their mountains, and in less than two hours brought back all my leather bottles and vessels full of excellent water.

During the whole time of my residence on the rivulet, they rendered me the same service, uniformly displaying the same zeal and the same readiness. One of these expeditions would have employed my Hottentots a whole day.

When on a journey, scarcity of water gives them no uneasiness, even in the middle of a desert. By a particular art they can discover water that is concealed in the bowels of the earth; and their instinct, in this point, is even superior to that of the other Africans. Animals, in like cases of distress, find water also; but it is only by the smell. There must be a current of air to convey to them the exhalation which rises from it; and consequently they must be to the windward. While I resided in the desert, during my first journey, my savages had shown more than once the same faculty; and I myself acquired it also from their instruction, as I have mentioned in my narrative.

The

The Houzouana, more expert, employs only his sight. He throws himself flat on the ground, takes a distant view, and, if the space which he traverses with his eye conceals any subterranean spring, he rises and points with his finger to the spot where it is to be found. The only thing by which he discovers it is that ethereal and subtile exhalation which evaporates from every current of water, when not sunk to too great a depth.

With regard to pools and other collections formed by the rain, as their evaporation is more sensible, they are discoverable even when hid by an eminence or a hill; and the vapour of streams, such as rivers or rivulets, being still more abundant, is so distinctly marked by it, that their course and even all their sinuosities may be traced.

I endeavoured to learn this art of the Houzouanas, during the time I resided amongst them. I followed their example, and practised their lessons; and was at length able to make similar discoveries, and with as much certainty. My talent, however, was far from being so extensive as theirs; for, owing either to the natural weakness of my sight or the want of experience,

perience, I could distinguish water at no greater distance than three hundred paces, while they could perceive it at a distance much more considerable.

The only arms of the Houzouanas are bows and arrows. The arrows, which are very short, are carried on the shoulder in a quiver, about eighteen inches in length, and four in diameter, made of the bark of the aloe, and covered with the skin of a large species of lizard, which these wanderers find in all their rivers, particularly on the banks of Orange and Fish-River.

Obliged to maintain a numerous troop, and being desirous that the whole horde should participate in my game, of which I procured abundance, I went out daily to the chace, always accompanied by a great number of the Houzouanas. If I hunted in the mountains, I climbed the rocks with them. In the plain I used one of my horses; but, whether they followed me or were employed in driving towards me the zebras and antelopes, they showed themselves indefatigable; and, however fast I rode, I always found them keep pace with me.

My

My people, prejudiced against this nation, were filled with alarm whenever they saw me thus occupied. Every report of my gun made them tremble. They continually imagined that the Houzouanas were in the act of assassinating me, and that they should afterwards experience themselves the same fate; and they never beheld me return to my camp without testifying their joy, considering me as a man escaped from death.

For myself, being daily employed in rendering them services, and seeing these savages, on their part, ever ready to oblige me, I laughed at such vain terrors. In my way of judging, I had nothing to apprehend from a people who gained so much by my presence, and who would, consequently, have been considerable losers by my death.

During the long excursions which we made together, they in no instance belied their character. In many respects they appeared to resemble the Arabs, who, being also wanderers, and like them brave and addicted to rapine, adhere with unalterable fidelity to their engagements, and defend, even to the last drop of their blood, the traveller who civilly purchases



chases their services, and puts himself under their protection.

If my plan of traversing from south to north the whole of Africa was at all practicable, I repeat it, it could have been accomplished only with the Houzouanas. I am convinced that fifty men of this temperate, brave, and indefatigable nation would have been sufficient to enable me to carry it into execution; and I shall always regret that I became acquainted with them too late for the trial, and at a period when numberless misfortunes had compelled me, for a time at least, to renounce the idea.

With whatever confidence, however, their fidelity had inspired me, I did not neglect the precautions dictated by prudence. I never trusted myself with them beyond the precincts of my camp, unless when well armed. I will even confess that, at first, I made my people keep watch; that I had constantly a dog in my tent during the night; and that my fire-arms were always well loaded. But at the same time I must also acknowledge that, in taking these precautions, I had not so much in view the Houzouanas of the horde, as the rest of their nation, who, not being acquainted,  
and

and having contracted no alliance with me, might discover my fires, and think themselves authorised to take me by surprise, and attack me in the night, after the manner of those freebooters known in general by the name of Boshmen.

My adventures have given me already many opportunities of speaking of these Boshmen. I have before said, that the people at the Cape comprehend under this general appellation every man, of whatever nation or colour, who, deserting, retires to the forests or the mountains, there to associate with other fugitives; live with them under such laws as a band of robbers may be supposed to form, and subsist by rapine, without even sparing similar associations of his fellows and equals.

The Houzouanas, being known only by their incursions and plundering, are in the colonies often confounded with the Boshmen, and distinguished by the same appellation. Sometimes, however, from their tawny colour, they are called Chinese Hottentots; and, by means of this double denomination, ill-informed travellers may easily be led into an error, of which the consequence must be, that

their narratives will be replete with absurdity and falsehoods.

Their real name, and the only one which they give themselves, is that of Houzouana; and they have nothing in common with the Boshmen, who are not a distinct people, but a mere collection of fugitives and free-booters. The Houzouanas form no alliances but among themselves. Being almost always at war with the surrounding nations, they never mix with them; and, if they consent at any time to admit a stranger into their hordes, it is only after a long acquaintance, a sort of apprenticeship, during which he has given proofs of his fidelity, and established his courage. The Hottentot whom I found there had submitted to this trial, and from the manner in which he had acquitted himself was held in the highest estimation.

Though the Houzouanas are wanderers in their country, and spend the greater part of the year in emigrations and distant excursions, they inhabit an immense district, of which, indeed, they are almost the sole inhabitants, and from which, in my opinion, no nation would be able to expel them. It forms that part of  
Africa

Africa which, in a direction from east to west, extends from Caffraria to the country of the Greater Nimiquas. With regard to its breadth, from south to north, I am ignorant of its extent ; but I believe it to be very considerable ; not only because an immense territory is necessary to so wandering a people, but also because I have reason to think the individuals of this nation to be very numerous.

It is supposed at the Cape that their population is small ; and the reason of this opinion is, that when they emigrate to the western coasts, whether for the purpose of subsisting there for a time or to plunder, they are never seen in large bodies. But with these people this is only a stratagem. Afraid of being attacked, were their number known, they conceal their march as much as possible. They pursue their course through the narrowest defiles, or over the tops of mountains ; and frequently even they travel only by night. This causes them to be the more dreaded ; and it is often imagined that they are already in the neighbourhood, when they are a hundred or perhaps two hundred leagues distant.

I am inclined to believe that the Houzou-



anas are the original stem of the various nations inhabiting at present the southern part of Africa, and that from them all the tribes of the eastern and western Hottentots are descended. Proofs of this, I think, may be perceived in their features, and in that clapping noise of the tongue when they speak, which in them is much more striking.

These, however, are vague conclusions, insufficient to establish the fact in question, which requires more decisive testimonies. The people themselves know nothing of their origin. In vain did I several times interrogate them on the subject; they always replied that they inhabited the same country which had been inhabited by their ancestors; and this was all the satisfaction I could obtain. It was not till my return to the Cape that I received any information concerning them, which was from a few old planters residing in the eastern part of the colony; and though I consider their accounts only as ancient traditions, the veracity of which I dare not warrant, I shall here lay them before my readers.

When the Europeans came to establish themselves at the Cape, the Houzouanas, they said,

inhabited the country of Camdebo, the snowy mountains, and the district that separates these mountains from Caffraria. Become neighbours to the colony, in consequence of its extending itself towards them, they at first lived on peaceable terms with the planters; and, as they displayed more intelligence and greater activity than the Hottentots, they were even employed in preference to assist in cultivating the land and in forming the settlement. This good understanding and harmony were, however, soon interrupted by that multitude of lawless banditti sent from Holland to people the country.

These worthless profligates wished to enjoy the fruits of the land without the trouble of tilling it. Educated, besides, with all the prejudices of the whites, they imagined that men of a different colour were born only to be their slaves. They accordingly subjected them to bondage, condemned them to the most laborious services, and repaid these services with harsh and severe treatment. The Houzouanas, incensed at such arbitrary and tyrannical conduct, refused any longer to work for them, and retired to the defiles of their mountains. The  
planters

planters took up arms and pursued them ; they massacred them without pity, and seized on their cattle and their country. Those who escaped their atrocities betook themselves to flight, and removed to the land which they now occupy ; but, on quitting their former possessions, they swore, in their own name and that of their posterity, to exterminate these European monsters, to be revenged against whom they had so many incitements. And thus, if tradition be true, was a peaceful and industrious nation rendered warlike, vindictive, and ferocious.

This hatred, so just in its principle, has been perpetuated from generation to generation, though the Houzouanas of the present day are ignorant of the original cause of it. Bred up with an invincible aversion to the planters, they know only that they are animated to plunder and destroy them ; but it is only by a vague sentiment of detestation, with the source of which they are unacquainted ; and which happily, in rendering them cruel towards the planters, does not prevent them from being good, kind, and humane, towards each other.

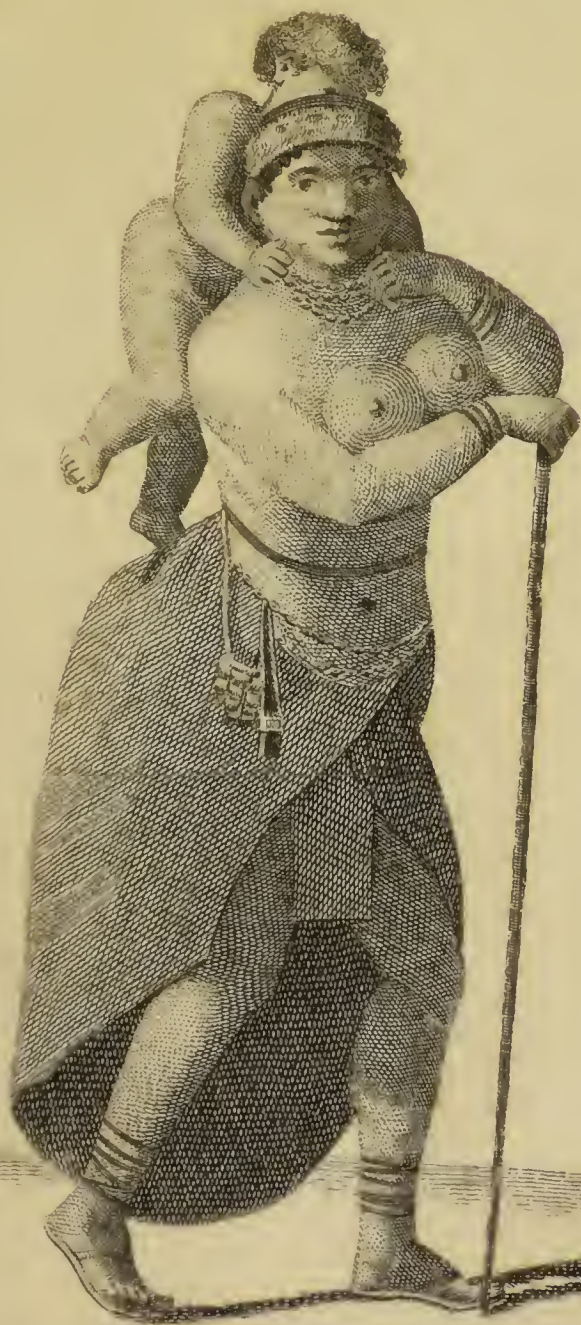
What I have said respecting the moral and

physical qualities of the Houzouanas proves, in my opinion, that at present they form a distinct nation ; but what singularly excited my astonishment was the enormous natural rump of the women, which, like the artificial ones adapted some years ago by the French ladies, distinguishes them from every other people, savage or polished, I have ever known.

I have several times, in my former travels, had occasion to remark, that, among the female Hottentots in general, as they advance in age, the inferior part of the back swells out, and acquires a size which greatly exceeds the proportion it bore in infancy with the other parts of the body. The Houzouana women, having in their figure some resemblance to the Hottentots, and appearing, therefore, to be of the same race, one might be induced to believe that their projection behind is only the Hottentot rump more swelled and extended. I observed, however, that among the former this singularity was an excrescence of slow growth, and in some measure an infirmity of old age ; whereas among the latter it is a natural deformity, an original characteristic of their race.

Reflect-





HOZOUANA WOMAN.







HEAD OF A HOUZOUANA WOMAN.





Reflecting on the cause of this phenomenon, I ascribed it at first to an extraordinary curvature of the spine, or to a prominence of the lower vertebræ and os sacrum, which, projecting forwards, rendered that part more protuberant, and threw the haunches out of their usual position; but very decisive observations soon convinced me of the contrary. The bones which form the skeleton of the reins were in their natural situation; none of the vertebræ were deranged; and this extended rump is only a fat and fleshy mass, which, upon every movement of the body, exhibits a most remarkable quivering and undulation.

I saw a girl, three years old, entirely naked, as indeed are all the children of the savages at that age, playing and jumping before me for several hours. I at first pitied her condition, in being loaded with so cumbrous a burden, which I thought must obstruct her movements; but I did not perceive that, on this account, she was the less at her ease, or at all restricted in her freedom. In amusing herself with a young brother, she would sometimes walk along as if she had been counting her steps; then suddenly stopping, and stamping her foot against the  
N 3 ground,

ground, would give a shock to her body, which made her posteriors quiver like a lump of shaking jelly. The little urchin would endeavour to imitate her ; but not being able, as he had not the same configuration behind, which is peculiar to the females, he would burst into a passion, while his sister laughed heartily at his disappointment.

The Houzouana mothers wear on their reins, like our miners, a skin which covers this protuberance of the posteriors ; but which, being thin and pliable, yields to the quivering of the flesh, and becomes agitated in the same manner. When on a journey, or when they have children too young to follow them, they place them upon their rump. I saw one of these women run in this manner with a child, about three years of age, that stood erect on its feet at her back, like a foot-boy behind a carriage.

With this monstrous deformity, who would believe that the Houzouana women have a hand and foot remarkably delicate ; that their arms are beautifully formed ; and that these parts of their body are absolutely perfect ? Obligated to follow their husbands in their long excursions, they  
wear,

wear, like them, sandals ; like them, have their heads covered with a cap formed of the skin of a jackal ; and, like them also, go almost entirely naked, wearing before only a very small apron of modesty, and on their loins the piece of leather of which I have before spoken. At their side is a box made of wood, ivory, or tortoise-shell, to hold the grease with which they *boughou* and besmear themselves, and the tail of some quadruped, fixed to the end of a stick, with which they wipe their body and face when they perspire. They have no beads nor any ornament whatever, unless we consider as ornaments garters and bracelets of raw leather.

As a fondness for dress and a desire of pleasing are, however, natural to the sex, the Houzouana women no sooner saw the beads and toys with which those in my troop were ornamented than they expressed a desire to have some also. I distributed, therefore, a few to each of them ; and from that moment they never ceased to wear them, and with much apparent satisfaction.

I have said that they *boughou* and besmear themselves with grease. This custom is com-

mon to the men as well as to the women. Like the wrestlers and pugilists of antiquity, they think it necessary to preserve the pliability of their limbs. For this operation, they employ the fat of such animals as they kill in the chase; and if that fail them, they have recourse to the oil which exudes from the nymphs of ants when they broil them for nourishment, and which they collect and preserve for the purpose. Their bodies, when anointed with this oil, have a very strong smell; but it is not disagreeable.

On the third day of my encampment near the horde, five men and two women arrived from an excursion, bringing with them two live sheep. The fruits of their depredations had consisted of three of these animals; but the third escaped by the way and was lost.

They were driving the sheep before them, when, on approaching the kraal, they suddenly perceived my camp. The sight of so many strangers, of whom they had no knowledge, alarmed them. They instantly abandoned their booty, and retired with precipitation; but, seeing their companions in a state of safety, which seemed to announce that we were on



good terms with each other, they again advanced, and in less than an hour were as familiar as the rest.

As I intended to make an excursion towards the north north-west, for the purpose of discovering rare birds or new hordes, I communicated my design to the Houzouanas, who readily offered to accompany me, but confessed at the same time that, having never penetrated far into that part of the country, they could give me no information respecting it.

Being ignorant what time this excursion might require, and with what difficulties it might be attended, I thought it prudent that some of my own people should be of the party. The journey, however, was extremely fatiguing, and unproductive of the smallest discovery.

On my return, the Houzouanas proposed another in the opposite quarter. To accomplish this second excursion, it would be necessary to traverse the mountains for three whole days, after which I should find nations with whom they were at peace, and who were of the Kabobiqua race; but I must have left my horses and cattle behind me, as the roads, they

they said, were impassable for these animals. Though this plan was agreeable in certain points of view, it displeased me in others. Happily, however, they enabled me to form another, which I determined to execute.

I have already remarked, that it was by a fortunate chance that I fell in with them. They were then on their way to the eastern coasts, and had halted on the banks of the rivulet only to wait for some of their parties, who had detached themselves from the general body, in order to go a-marauding in the plains. Their route towards the east was little different from that which I proposed to take; and I saw that, by marching along with them or engaging them to attend me, I should obtain trusty guides as well as able defenders. It was possible that I might meet with bodies of Houzouanas, with whom, were none of these people in my company, I might be obliged to combat. United to them, should I even be attacked by a whole nation, I had nothing to fear.

I did not, therefore, hesitate a moment; and, to escort me as far as Fish-River, I offered them four milch-cows. To people who often  
expose

expose their lives for a single sheep, this was a temptation not to be resisted. Accordingly they requested only that I would allow them four or five days to collect their friends—to which I readily consented.

In the evening they dispersed themselves over the mountain, climbing to the highest summits, there to kindle fires which might serve as signals to the scattered parties of their friends; or to observe those which the latter might kindle in the plains. They had no doubt that, if they succeeded in making their fires be perceived, all the different bodies would immediately join them.

Nocturnal fires are a peculiar language understood and employed by almost all savage nations. None, however, have carried this art so far as the Houzouanas, because none have so much need of understanding and bringing it to perfection. If it be necessary to announce a defeat or a victory, an arrival or departure, a successful plundering expedition or the want of assistance, in a word, any intelligence whatever, they are able, either by the number of their fires or the manner in which they arrange them, to make it known in an instant.

They

They are even so sagacious as to vary their fires from time to time, lest their enemies should become acquainted with their signals, and treacherously employ them, in their turn, to surprise them.

I am perfectly unacquainted with the principles of this language, invented with so much ingenuity; not having asked them to teach me so much as the elements of it, because I was certain they would have refused. All I can say is, that three fires kindled at the distance of twenty paces from each other, so as to form an equilateral triangle, are a signal for rallying; at least, during the five days employed in calling together and waiting for the scattered detachments, they made no other.

It appears as if the marauders were at too great a distance to perceive their signals; for none of them returned. Their absence, however, did not prevent us from setting out on the sixth day. The Houzouanas left their huts standing; and, to announce their departure, four men remained in the kraal, who had orders to kindle other fires, and to join us in the night, after they had lighted them.

This arrangement was highly displeasing to  
my



my poltroons. They apprehended that the intention of my guides was to lead us into some ambush, where we should all be massacred; and that the four men left behind were, by their signals, to give notice to some of their parties to come upon us while we were asleep. In short, there was no danger which their terrified imagination did not dread; and so great was their cowardice, that they durst not venture to stir from my camp, even in the day time; nor would my hunters ever go out to the chase unless I accompanied them.

We directed our course across the mountains in a straight line towards the south-east, and did not halt till ten at night, in a place where we found plenty of good water in the cavities of the rocks. Towards midnight, the four men of the horde arrived; and if their presence afforded me pleasure, as it announced the scrupulous punctuality and active zeal of their nation, it was no less agreeable to my poltroons, whose suspicions it in some measure allayed.

Though they now saw their pretended enemies before them, they were nevertheless so struck that they still apprehended some nocturnal

turnal treachery. I had, therefore, no need to recommend to them to be vigilant. Not one indulged himself in sleep; on the contrary, they all spent the night in casting their eyes every where around, palpitating if they heard the smallest noise, and watching with alarm the least movement of the Houzouanas, who, during the whole time, were reposing in tranquillity.

When day appeared, so that I could distinguish objects around me, I observed, with considerable pain, that the earth was absolutely parched up, that it did not present a single blade of grass, and that my cattle must consequently have remained the whole night without food.

I communicated my uneasiness to the Houzouanas, and asked them how many days it would require to go in a straight direction to the sea, and whether we should meet with pasturage and water on our route. Their answer threw me into consternation. They informed me, that if the drought had been general, as they were assured, we must expect, by advancing in that quarter, to find, wherever we passed, a soil equally naked, and in all probability destitute of water.

After

After such intelligence, it was impossible for me to proceed farther. Besides exposing myself to the hazard of losing all my catile, and of leaving in the desert the greater part of my effects, I could not forget that I had every day to feed, independently of my own party, forty new mouths ; and that for such a multitude an abundance of large game would be requisite. In a country that afforded neither pasturage nor water, what hopes were there of finding such game, when the period of their passage was elapsed ? The case was now different from what it had been in the fertile plains of Caffraria, when the body of Hottentots in my train, who were so interesting and of so much importance to me, having plenty of every thing, increased the happiness of my situation by the most agreeable relaxations and the most varied amusements. Here wretchedness and fatigue were likely to be my constant companions; and, though free from the apprehensions and terror which pervaded my whole company, I was far from beholding with the same eye, as in that instance, these new savages, associated with me in my excursions, and offering to share in my fatigue. My only resource, under the  
3 present

present circumstances, was to proceed to a district less parched; and having on this point interrogated my Houzouanas, they assured me, that, by following the chain of mountains, we could not fail to find both water and pasture.

There was no longer occasion to hesitate. I gave orders, therefore, to face about; and we directed our course along the edge of the mountains that bounded us on the east. But the road we had to travel was so covered with stones and intersected by ravines, that we spent the whole day in advancing six leagues, and without so much as once halting, notwithstanding the insupportable heat of a scorching sun, as we could find neither water nor shelter by the way.

I met with nothing remarkable during this day's journey, except the nest of an ostrich, in which was the female hatching her young. Three eggs, deposited on the bare ground, lay before her; and she was sitting upon nine others, the young in which were in so advanced a state as to be ready to burst the shell.

The separation of the eggs in this manner into two parcels, near to, but distant from each



each other, is a fact I have already mentioned in my first travels; but the way in which I accounted for it has been contradicted. There are persons who cannot believe that the ostrich places eggs before her nest, to serve as food for her young when they are hatched. So much foresight in a bird, which we have hitherto thought proper to consider as the emblem of stupidity, appears to them an improbable fiction. It has been said, that, before the publication of my travels, no naturalist ever mentioned the circumstance; which is the sum total of all the objections they can make; and I have surely no need to shew its futility, since, as naturalists have spoken so differently on other points, what conclusion would be made should I affirm, on my part, that they have published nothing but falsehoods and errors?

How many discoveries in natural history, controverted at first on account of their novelty, are now admitted as incontestable truths! When a traveller thought proper to say, that coral was not a marine production of the vegetable kingdom, but a real nest constructed by insects; and when Delisle, on his return from

VOL. III. O China,

China, advanced that ambergris was produced by a whale, and gave proofs of it, were there not men, your closet naturalists, who opposed their assertions?

Let us not believe from vague report every thing indiscriminately. Such conduct would by no means accord with the dictates of reason. Let us previously examine the credibility due to the person who may advance new facts, and the evidence adduced in support of them; but let us not reject them merely because they are new. The more we study nature, the more we shall discover circumstances which it will be impossible for us to explain. But how many daily occur before our eyes, which we even never think of examining! Let those writers on natural history, whose whole scientific knowledge consists in reading and reasoning from books, inform me, for example, why the swallow, when its nest is destroyed, will begin ten or twelve times successively to rebuild it in the same place, while indigenous birds abandon theirs as soon as it has been touched, and go elsewhere to construct another.

With regard to the eggs set apart by the  
ostrich

ostrich for the first nourishment of her young, I can quote, in support of my assertion, the testimony of a celebrated navigator, de Bougainville, who had sailed round the globe before I even thought of visiting Africa. Having called upon me to see my collection of natural history, after the publication of my first travels, and the conversation turning upon what I had written respecting the ostrich, he told me, that my observation was strictly correct, that he had every where met with proofs of it, and that he had refrained from being the first to publish it, from the fear that his veracity would be called in question. This however is one of those novelties which ought to be made known by men capable of bestowing on them credibility; for the opinion the world has formed of a man is often indispensable to the giving the colour of truth to the most unquestionable facts.

From what I have here had occasion to say respecting the ostrich, I flatter myself that I shall be pardoned for adding a few observations more upon the same subject.

It has been asserted by a naturalist to whom science is much indebted, that at Senegal this

bird sits on her eggs during the night only ; and that she abandons them in the day to the heat of the sun. I do not know whether the heat at Senegal be greater than under the same latitude on the other side of the equator, nor whether the ostriches of the former are superior in instinct to those of the latter climate. But from the Cape, as far as the twenty-second degree of latitude, I have seen nests ; and I can assert, that I never found one which was not covered by a male or a female, unless, from the death of the ostrich that had been sitting on them, or some other particular accident, the eggs had been totally deserted.

With regard to the number of eggs, the season when they are laid, and the period of incubation, nothing that can be depended on is yet known : for those who have traversed Africa present us, on this subject, with contradictory evidence only, the uncertainty of which must necessarily embarrass the naturalist.

What may have led travellers into an error is, that in the same district we see, at one and the same time, a female which has begun to lay, young ostriches two or three months old, and others as large as the mother. All  
this



this presents an idea of disorder in the species, which proceeds from two causes. I shall speak of the first elsewhere, as it is common to all the birds of Africa ; and content myself at present with mentioning the second.

Birds of the same species copulate generally at the same season, and consequently ought all to produce young about the same period. Their eggs, however, may be destroyed, and the mother obliged in consequence to lay a second, and even perhaps a third set ; and it is evident that there will then be young scarcely hatched, while others will have attained a considerable size.

This is the case with the ostrich. She generally lays ten eggs ; but these eggs are much sought after by the savages, who consider them as dainties ; and, when they discover them, they never fail to carry them away. The consequence is, that the animal is retarded in laying, and that young ostriches are reared of different ages. If a Hottentot find a nest where incubation is not yet begun, and if he suppose that it is known to himself only, it becomes a treasure, the produce of which he will reserve for a long time.

Instead of removing the eggs all at once, he takes only one or two, convinced that the female, who never begins to sit till she has completed her number, will lay again. Two days after he will repeat his theft. In short, if he plunder with address and precaution, he may cause her to lay as many as fifty; and sometimes even, when the nest is occupied by two or three ostriches associated together, and sitting in company, as I have seen and already mentioned, he may procure a still greater number.

A naturalist unacquainted with these facts may easily be led into an error. Accordingly, when a savage tells him that he has taken from an ostrich's nest sixty or eighty eggs, and perhaps more, he ought thus to account for the circumstance, and not imagine that there is any great variation in the number laid by different individuals of this species. But I return to my camp.

Scarcely had we halted at the bottom of the mountains, when my Houzouanas hastened to climb them, in order to discover the fires of their absent friends, and to kindle others to inform them where they might be found. Their  
signals,

signals, however, were equally fruitless as before; but these active people had carried all my leather bottles with them to the top of the mountains; and, when they returned, they brought them back filled with fresh water.

On my departure from Orange-River, I had provided myself with a great number of these bottles, which I had caused to be made of sheep's skins, in imitation of those invented by my people to contain the oil of their whale. They were commonly carried by the women, either on their backs, affixed to a strap, or suspended between two from a stick which each held by one end; but the Houzouanas, from the time they formed a part of my caravan, were so polite as to ease the women of this burden; and, while they accompanied me, these vessels were always carried by them.

The chain of mountains extended in a southern direction. We continued our journey for two whole days along its course; and we every where found pasture for our cattle, and water in the rocks for ourselves. This route, however, thwarted the desire I had of penetrating farther to the west, thereby to approach the borders of the sea.

To the west, before me, were other mountains, the chain of which, more considerable still than that we had followed, lost itself on the horizon, and by its direction was likely to conduct me to the ocean, where I was desirous of ending this excursion. My guides assured me that I should in this, as in the preceding course, meet both with pasture and water. They added too, that in the mountains there were several hordes with whom they were at present in amity ; and to convince me, by the favourable reception that would be given them by these hordes, that they knew how to conciliate and retain friends, they requested me to pursue this course.

From all these considerations united, I was induced to comply with their desire. However, before I gave orders for our departure, I wished to know how far we had to travel. For this purpose, I ascended one of the peaks, and, estimating the distance between the two chains, I concluded that it was about twenty-four leagues. But it gave me great uneasiness to observe, that the whole plain beneath presented scarcely any thing to my view but dry sand ; that it contained very little verdure, and not a single tree.

With



Withour provisions and leather bottles, we had for ourselves a sufficient supply for this fatiguing journey ; but it was necessary that our cattle should accomplish it without perhaps either eating or drinking. Cattle in Europe, if condemned thus to fast for two days under a scorching sun, in a march of twenty-four leagues, and through a horrid desert, would undoubtedly perish ; but ours, accustomed to long and frequent fatigue, were capable of supporting it. However, to prepare them by a little rest, I remained encamped two days ; and employed the time in hunting excursions, in which we killed several coudou antelopes and a female elephant, which furnished us with abundance of provision.

On the day appointed, we set out early in the morning, and did not halt till nine in the evening. My cattle, as I expected, had found by the way no water, and very little grass ; and, after so laborious a journey, it was necessary that they should still pass the night without food.

With regard to ourselves, the Houzouanas had been so provident as to fill all my leather bottles with water found among the rocks ; but,

having been beaten about the whole day, it was as warm as lie; and, as it had contracted too the taste and smell of the skins in which it was confined, it seemed calculated to act rather as an emetic than to refresh us and allay our thirst.

Fortunately I had saved a few jars of wine and beer, which, having become sour by the agitation and heat, formed excellent vinegar. I poured a few spoonfuls of it among the water which we had to drink; and its acidity, by correcting the disagreeable taste, rendered it a more healthful beverage.

During the night, we observed fires towards the south-west. As they seemed to announce some of those hordes of whom the Houzouanas had spoken, I gave orders, when we set out next morning, to proceed towards them.

This day's journey could not fail of being extremely fatiguing to animals which had not tasted drink for twenty-four hours; but to me it was more so than it needed to have been, because, having left the caravan, in company with Klaas, to pursue some pale-yellow-coloured zebras we had perceived in the plain, we lost ourselves for a time, and wandered over  
a great

a great deal of ground to little purpose before we could recover our way.

Agreeably to the rule I had laid down of sending a few persons before me, when I approached a new horde, to inform them of my arrival and conciliate their friendship, I thought proper to observe the same practice on the present occasion. It seemed even of importance that I should choose, as deputies for that purpose, some of the Houzouanas, who had boasted of being the friends and allies of all the hordes in this district. But, as they had told me they were now at peace with them, I concluded that this was not their habitual state; and that, consequently, they and their neighbours would behave to each other with reserve. For that reason I was unwilling to dispatch any of the Houzouanas. So much intimacy appeared to me suspicious: not that I thought the latter capable of treachery; but I was afraid lest the horde should be prejudiced against me, when they found me attended by so many followers, and saw me introduced by people who were certainly more dreaded than loved.

To send any of my own Hottentots was impracticable. If they went alone, they could  
not

not have accomplished the object of their mission for want of interpreters; and if accompanied by Houzouanas, the inconvenience of a disagreeable prepossession still subsisted. While under this uncertainty, I had only one course to pursue: to give up all thoughts of dispatching any one before me—which was the plan I adopted. About nine in the evening we arrived in sight of the horde; and, without any preliminaries, I immediately encamped at the distance of about two hundred paces.

An arrival so abrupt was likely to fill them with alarm, and perhaps instantly to disperse them. But, whatever might be their fear, they had been rendered incapable of flight by a very melancholy misfortune. A great number of them had already fallen a sacrifice to a pestilential disorder; and those who remained were still attacked by it as well as their cattle. Covered with ulcers from head to foot, they lay extended in their huts, and exhaled a cadaverous smell that was scarcely supportable.

This pestilence, they said, had first broken out in the countries towards the east, where its spread had been attended with dreadful ravage; and it was there they had caught the infection.

A few



A few days before, such of the horde as supposed themselves in good health had retired towards the south, to avoid its influence; but the diseased told us they had carried the seeds of it along with them; and that it would probably show itself before they had accomplished their journey.

I shall here observe, that this flight may serve to explain some absurd assertions to be found in the works of certain ill-informed travellers. Savage nations, according to their account, when emigrating or on journeys, abandon such old and infirm persons as are not in a condition to follow them. This is a calumny founded upon an error, which the fact above related may serve to rectify.

The horrid spectacle we had before our eyes filled with much alarm my whole caravan, and, above all, my Greater Nimiquas, who, most susceptible of terror, because the most timid and pusillanimous of the company, had besides some experience of this plague, which they had seen spread itself among their nation, and with the effects of which they were consequently acquainted.

They declared to me that, if I did not alter  
my

my route, they would quit me the next morning ; that the fear of being attacked by the Boshmen was nothing in comparison of so horrid a death, which they considered as inevitable ; and that, after all, it might be possible for them to escape the Boshmen by travelling in the night.

For once, their terror appeared to me to be well founded. I was not free myself from apprehension ; and I certainly had as little desire as they to expose myself to a disease which in three days might involve us in general destruction.

I gave notice, therefore, that next morning at sun-rise I should decamp ; and, in the mean time, I took such precautions as I conceived to be necessary for our preservation ; as posting ourselves to the windward, kindling fires around us during the night, and, above all, guarding our cattle, to prevent them from approaching those of the horde, lest they should catch the infection. Next morning, having sent some tobacco to the sick, giving orders to those who carried it, to deposit it at a distance from the huts, and strictly charging them to accept of nothing in return, I made the signal for

for departing; and we set out with a resolution of advancing due east, in order to avoid the infection, which actually prevailed in the quarter in which we had been already travelling.

We now regretted that we had, two days before, quitted the eastern chain of mountains, and were desirous of returning; but it was impossible, without making a long journey and subjecting ourselves to new and extreme fatigue, to effect it. Our good fortune, however, sent us an abundant rain, which comforted and refreshed my cattle.

Notwithstanding this relief, as, besides their burdens, they had to carry my people also, and as they travelled thirteen leagues without stopping more than an hour or two, they arrived very much exhausted. I was even obliged to leave two of them by the way; but luckily, having been revived by the rain and a little repose, they followed us to the camp during the night.

Of all my attendants, the Houzouanas alone still retained some courage and strength: as to the rest, little accustomed to extraordinary fatigue, and ill calculated to endure it, they were

quite worn out. They dragged themselves along with great difficulty, and were obliged in turns to ride upon the oxen. The Greater Nimiquas, with their eyes sunk and a dejected air, had scarcely strength to utter a word; but, though they did not speak, their silence every moment announced the regret they felt at having engaged to follow me. In short, whoever had seen my caravan would have taken it for one of those flying hospitals that usually follow in the rear of an army.

The animals themselves, extenuated by long fasting and long marches, shared in the general dejection. My horses were lame; and, as it was impossible to use them, I had been obliged to travel on foot. I have already remarked, that such was the fatigue of my oxen, that I had been forced to abandon two of them. The feet of my dogs were absolutely sore and covered with blood. They were not only become indifferent respecting the pursuit of game, but saw it rise before them without stirring so much as a step to follow it. I could not, as formely, place them in my waggons; for I had none. It was a truly affecting spectacle to see the limping manner in which they walked.



walked. From time to time they stopped to lick their feet ; but this momentary relief, by softening the skin, rendered them still more painful.

The night was attended with no other event than the discovery of some fires, which we observed before us on the mountains, and which were productive of joy as they awakened our hopes. My Houzouanas in particular testified their satisfaction, conceiving at first that they were signals made by their companions ; but having looked attentively, without distinguishing in these fires their own language and characters, they agreed in considering them as kindled by some neighbouring horde with whom they were unacquainted.

The sleep and repose of a single night were not sufficient to restore strength to people so much harassed as mine. Accordingly in the morning, they all complained that they were not able to stand upright ; and I thought, for a moment, that I should have been obliged to remain in the place where I had encamped. Having, however, represented to them that it would require only a day's journey to reach

the mountains and the horde whose fires we had seen, and promised that I would halt there for some days, to give them time to rest themselves, they resumed courage and recovered the use of their legs.

About five in the afternoon, we arrived in the neighbourhood of the horde. My oxen and dogs, having scented some water, instantly quitted us, and proceeded as fast as they could to the kraal, without its being in our power to check or recall them. Their smell had not deceived them. They found some wells; but, as they were shut, they could only snuff the vapours around without being able to quench their thirst.

It may easily be imagined how great must have been the surprise of the horde at the appearance of all these animals. Their surprise, however, was converted into alarm when they beheld my whole party, and observed near them a large body of those Houzouanas so much dreaded, with a white man in the midst of them, less formidable perhaps, but still more terrifying to a people who had never seen before a person of his colour. Astonished and  
stupefied

stupefied by the spectacle, they had neither the strength to fly nor the assurance to advance towards us.

To free them from this painful state, I drew near; and, without seeming to perceive their embarrassment, caused my interpreters to ask them if they had among them any persons infected with the malady which had driven us from the western mountains. My question filled them with terror. They were acquainted by experience, as well as my Nimiquas, with its devastations; but at that time they were not attacked by it; and, upon receiving their answer, I instantly ordered my camp to be formed near them.

During the last four days, my animals had travelled more than forty leagues without tasting water or food, except once at the diseased horde. I found pasturage, however, in the neighbourhood of my present encampment; and I proposed, according to my promise, to halt some days in order to give time to my whole caravan to recover their strength. On this account, I was desirous of establishing an intercourse with the new horde and conciliating their friendship. This, however, appeared at

first to be a matter of some difficulty. Neither in the afternoon nor in the evening had a single person of the kraal approached my camp; and the sentiments which this conduct announced surprised me the more, as no savage nation had ever behaved towards me in the same manner. Were they afraid of me, of the Houzouanas, or of the infectious distemper prevailing in the canton from which we had come? This question I cannot resolve: but their keeping at a distance betrayed suspicion at least; and this suspicion was so great, that, during the night, they deliberated whether they should not retire to the mountains.

Klaas, who sought every opportunity to serve and assist me, having gone out at break of day to make observations, came to communicate to me an important remark. The horde was very considerable; and yet he had seen only a small number of cattle, incapable of supplying food to so many individuals. Hence he concluded that they had removed or concealed the greater part of their herds: a conjecture that appeared to be well founded; but the conduct of these savages afflicted more than it astonished me.

Desirous,



Desirous, if possible, to put an end to it, I assembled the Houzouanas, prescribed to them the conduct which I wished them to observe towards the horde, and declared at the same time, that, if they gave occasion for the slightest complaint, they would not only forfeit my friendship, but that I would unite with the horde to exterminate them even to the last man. They protested that they would strictly adhere to what they had promised; and I must here repeat, that during the whole of their stay with me, they never once failed in their engagements.

Being perfectly easy in regard to the Houzouanas, my next business was to remove the distrust of the horde; and with this view I repaired, without a single attendant, instantly to the kraal. The confidence which this step announced on my part dissipated their fears, and presently there was established between us a perfect union. Their flocks and herds reappeared. In the evening they came to my camp with some milk; and they brought me even a few sheep, for which I paid them liberally in tobacco. I bought also five oxen and four cows, which I immediately delivered to

the Houzouanas, thereby fulfilling the engagement into which I. had entered with them. In short, the whole horde came the next morning, with the utmost cordiality and kindness, to visit me.

To strengthen these sentiments of fraternity, I proposed a grand hunting party, to which every person should be admitted without exception. We killed on this occasion abundance of antelopes; and, in the distribution of the game, I gave, as will naturally be supposed, a liberal supply to all the inhabitants of the horde.

The rest which my cattle enjoyed during my abode with these people, and the excellent pasturage which they found in the neighbourhood, soon restored them to their former condition. There was nothing, therefore, to retard my departure; and I was under the less uneasiness respecting my future route, as the *Bushman's grass*, every where at the bottom of the mountains, was in full bloom.

Before I quitted the horde, I wished to do them a farther kindness; and I proposed that they should enter into a treaty of peace and alliance with the Houzouanas: a treaty at  
which

which neither crowned heads nor ambassadors would assist; but which, by a pledge simple and patriarchal, might be maintained as inviolate, and rendered perhaps more durable, than by the pompous words humanity, justice, and honour, so often employed to mask perfidy and falsehood. The Houzouanas offered to accede to it; and the other party were too much interested in its conclusion not to consent also. The pledge was an ox and two sheep, which the horde gave to the Houzouanas; and the two nations promised to be friends, or rather one of the two engaged to live at peace with the other.

Upon quitting the horde, we continued our march for nine miles together without halting, following the sinuosities of the chain of mountains; and, just as it was dark, arrived at a spring containing water sufficient to form a rivulet, which was overshadowed by mimosas. We had scarcely approached it when we were suddenly alarmed by a loud noise. It proceeded from a herd of wild animals, which, having taken up their station on the banks of the rivulet, as soon as they perceived us betook themselves to flight.

Desirous of knowing with what neighbours or what enemies we had to deal, I procured a light, and perceived through the smoke that the fugitives were elephants. By our fires, however, and by discharging a few volleys from time to time, we soon got rid of them, and passed the night in tolerable quiet.

When day appeared, I found that the chain of mountains altered its direction, and stretched to the west till it disappeared from the view. My first plan had been to advance to that quarter; but I could not, at present, persevere in it, without exposing myself and people to the danger of that horrid pestilence which ravaged the country. I consulted, therefore, my Houzouanas as to what route remained by which to reach Fish-River; for, eventually, it was there I wished to arrive, and it was there also they had agreed to conduct me.

My demand could not fail to give them satisfaction, since, by putting it in their power to guide me to the river by the shortest road, they would be the sooner able to discharge their engagement, and the sooner at liberty to go in search of their companions, and return to their home.

They



They replied, that the river was on the other side of the mountains behind us; that if I would trust myself to their care, and agree to cross the chain, they would in two days bring me to its banks; that they were acquainted with the defiles, through which they pledged themselves to convey my baggage in perfect safety; and that the first day, perhaps, would enable me to judge whether they were people who knew how to discharge their promises.

For myself, having found them hitherto tenacious of their word, I had no doubt of their fidelity, and resolved, with the fullest confidence, to give myself up to their direction. This, however, was not the case with my people. Their alarm revived, and they again imagined themselves lost. The Greater Nimiquas, a timid race, incapable of action in the time of danger, and always ready to be frightened at shadows, were still the first to disseminate terror. The fires which the Houzouanas every evening kindled on the eminences around us, had been to them an object of continual dread. In their opinion, they were signals made to call in other marauders, and give them notice of the  
moment

moment when they were to attack us. That moment they said was approaching; for they were sure, when led into the impassable defiles of the mountains, that we should all one after another be massacred.

Though this terror appeared to me absurd, I could employ no argument to remove it but the favourable opinion I entertained of the Houzouanas. However, before I undertook so hazardous a journey, the dangers and difficulties of which were unknown to us, I conceived it prudent to learn whether I could depend upon any of my people, and whether the fear manifested by the Nimiquas was general in my camp.

I thought proper, therefore, to interrogate Klaas, the most faithful and most sagacious of all my troop, and who, on that account, was become my counsellor and friend. I asked him if, during his intercourse with the Houzouanas, and the many opportunities he must have had of observing their conduct, he had seen any thing that ought to inspire me with distrust respecting their proposal; any thing that should lead me to apprehend that, by means of their signals, they had kept up a

correspondence with their friends, and intended to entice us among the mountains, where, having separated us from each other, it would be easy for them to destroy us.

Klaas, so far from being intimidated, endeavoured to inspire me with greater confidence. He justly observed, that the Houzouanas, by the manner in which they had hitherto conducted themselves, had sufficiently proved that they could have harboured against us no perfidious design; that in the course of the journey, instead of walking and consulting together, they always intermixed with the company, were always the first to give me every assistance in their power, to look after my cattle, to share in the labours of my camp, to brave the greatest fatigue in order to fetch water from the steepest rocks; that as to the fires, so alarming to my people, they were the same as those we had seen kindled at a distance previous to our arrival, and by no means signals designed to injure us; in short, that, at all events, it would be most prudent to act as usual, and not by a different behaviour give them reason to suspect that we were afraid of or wished to avoid them.

This

This language, from a man so observant, faithful, and intrepid, fixed my resolution. It was of little importance to me, whether the Nimiquas and others of the same character were afraid or not, or whether they followed me or staid behind. I was determined to pursue the route pointed out to me by the Houzouanas, and to abandon myself entirely to their direction. Besides, I was certain that, when I set out, my poltroons would infallibly accompany me; which was really the case.

None but a nation, active and indefatigable as the Houzouanas, would have attempted to cross these mountains, or have succeeded in their enterprize. For my part, I soon found so many obstacles and embarrassments, that, unattended by such guides, I freely confess I should have considered the undertaking as the height of folly, and given instant orders to my people to return.

The Houzouanas themselves had even expected this; and they endeavoured, in every possible way, to animate and encourage us. I saw them run on before, ascend the highest peaks to discover the easiest passages, and return alertly to point them out to us. They  
cared



cared not about doubling their fatigue, provided they could save us from any difficulty; and they displayed so much intelligence, so much zeal and attachment, that, from mere admiration of their conduct, I was almost insensible to the painful and distressing labour of our march.

It was the same with our animals. As my people were not in a condition to attend them, I was obliged to commit them entirely to the care of these guides; and they shewed the same fidelity in regard to this part of my caravan as to ourselves. Whilst some directed us across the ravines, the narrow defiles and fissures, others were employed in conducting our loaded oxen over the tops of the mountains. From the bottom of the rocks which we were climbing, we could hear them above us encouraging them by their cries; and the noise it occasioned, the first of the kind perhaps that had ever disturbed these solitudes, was re-echoed from the surrounding cliffs. The wild animals were frightened by it. I saw antelopes, hyænas, and even tigers, flying from us at a distance, and repairing to their retreats. The vulture too winged his way in the air,

abandoning his usual asylum, and replying to the bellowing of my animals by the most horrid croaking.

Situated as we were, the vicinity of ferocious beasts gave me no little uneasiness. Being necessarily separated by the ruggedness of the place, we were perfectly unable to assist each other, and had therefore every thing to apprehend in case of attack. When obliged to pass through a narrow and deep defile, we were exposed to a danger of another kind. Enclosed between rocks piled one upon another, and which sometimes rose perpendicularly to the height of more than two hundred feet, we ran the risk of being crushed to atoms by the fall of some fragment, detached by those who were marching above us. In the midst of these dangers, and others created by their imaginations, my poltroons were by no means at their ease. Consternation was painted in their countenances. They walked along in profound silence, but with emotions of disquietude at the same time that announced unequivocally the state of their minds.

At length, by dint of clambering, we gained the summit of the chain; which the first party of

my

my people had no sooner reached, than, casting their eyes downwards to the plain below, they shouted for joy, as if they had escaped a shipwreck.

We all flocked together, and the joy became general. The Houzouanas shared in the exultation, and pointed out to me with singular delight the windings of the river in the plain, and the trees with which its banks were bordered. My people began to be ashamed of the suspicions they had entertained of the fidelity of these men; and presently their confidence was so great as almost to dispel every shadow of uneasiness.

It now remained for us to descend the mountain; and we expected here a repetition of the fatigues which we had already experienced in ascending it: but, besides that the pleasure of approaching the end of our journey could not fail to soften them, we had reason to conclude that they would be much sooner at an end, because, the level of the river being higher than the plain on the opposite side, the space to be passed over was a great deal shorter; and we found also, at a certain distance from the summit, a convenient station  
for

for halting. It was a verdant and delightful valley, watered by a rivulet; and it appeared the more agreeable, as amidst these hideous mountains we had seen before nothing but objects of horror.

At sight of this charming valley, my people forgot all their past fatigues, and were equally regardless of those that were to come. The vicinity even of tigers, which had so much frightened them, no longer engaged their thoughts. They all joined in requesting that I would stop, and allow them to pass the night in this delightful spot; to which I consented the more readily, as it afforded excellent water for ourselves and very good pasturage for my cattle.

While my camp was preparing, I ascended the rivulet, to recreate myself with the beauties of its banks. After a few windings I arrived at a rock, hollowed in the shape of a grotto, where the stream took its rise, and where its cool limpid water formed a basin. And here, worn out with fatigue, I could not resist the temptation of enjoying the pleasure of the bath.

This relief comforted and refreshed me;  
and



and I quitted the grotto, after leaving my name inscribed on that virgin rock, which before had perhaps never been visited by human being.

In the night the Houzouanas ran to my tent, with great demonstrations of joy, to inform me, that they had at length perceived the signals of their comrades; and they pointed out to me, in the north-west point of the horizon, fires, which they said were made by one of their hordes, and which they had answered, letting the horde know that they would join it on the evening of the next day but one.

Had my company been less numerous, I would gladly have remained a week by this delightful brook, and near the cool grotto with which I had been so much pleased. But most of my people were eager to return home; the river they had in view increased their impatience; and the next morning they showed as much ardour for departing, as they had expressed unwillingness the day before to quit the brook. Accordingly I assented to their wish; and about noon we reached the banks of the much-desired river, without meeting

with the least accident in the arduous passage of the mountains.

The Greater Nimiquas now began to breathe, and to recover from their fright. The first day of our expedition, they preserved a gloomy silence, and were pensive and melancholy, as if leading to execution. On the second, when they perceived the plain, their brows began to unbend a little, and I perceived they had acquired sufficient confidence to whisper each other in the ear. But when, arrived at the river, they breathed their native air, and saw again a country they knew, cheerfulness and a sense of security overspread their countenances, and they recovered for the first time their speech and their wonted looks. You would have said, that, being on their own dunghill, they no longer feared those terrible Houzouanas, in whose company they had so trembled.

The next morning the Houzouanas announced to me, that they should depart and join their comrades. I had nothing more to ask of them, as they had performed their promise: yet I was not willing that these faithful

ful and intrepid guides should leave me, without giving them some testimony of my satisfaction and gratitude ; but I was in doubt what would be most agreeable to them.

My stock of tobacco was so diminished, that I had been obliged for some time to be strictly economical in my distributions: besides, these sober men, leading a wandering life at such a distance from the colony, are so accustomed to do without it, that the want of it costs them little. On glass beads they set scarcely any value. What would have been most acceptable to them was a knife: but I had not much more than half-a-dozen left, and of course I could not give one to each. I resolved, therefore, to distribute four among them; and, that no one might have reason to be dissatisfied, I proposed that they should shoot at a mark, and that the four who came nearest to it should each have a knife.

This exercise was a sort of festival for my caravan. For my own part, exclusive of the amusement I expected from it, it would teach me, from their address in handling their arms, how far the Houzouanas were formidable; and I should fix in their memories an event,

which would give them reason to talk of me for a long time, and make me known to their nation, if, as I hoped, I should revisit it.

My proposal was received with a shout of joy. The Hottentot alone appeared dissatisfied with it, because, conscious he was the least expert marksman, he despaired of obtaining a prize. If I had received services from the Houzouanas, I was more indebted for these services to their natural disposition than to him, who, being a stranger lately settled in the horde, could have little influence with regard to their treatment of me. Yet, as he had been useful to me in the character of an interpreter, and as it was he who had principally given me an account of the nation, I conceived that I owed him some acknowledgment, and therefore promised him a knife.

Our fire-arms are so certain, in consequence of their sight and the manner in which they may be pointed at an object, that in reality it is almost a disgrace to a man not to be dexterous in the use of them. It is not so with the bow; and, unless the savage shoot at an object perpendicularly over his head, the fustileer has an infinite advantage over him, particularly if  
the



the object at which he aims be situated in an horizontal direction.

In this case, unless the distance be very short, the arrow cannot go point-blank to the mark; but, to hit it, must describe a parabola, to determine the elements of which requires a complicated calculation.

Another necessary point to be considered is, the exact force that must be given to the arrow, that it may neither go beyond nor fall short of the mark.

Finally, a third indispensable circumstance to be known is the altitude of the curve, that is to say, the compound result of the force and distance.

To explain myself more clearly:—Suppose the mark be a hundred and fifty feet distance; in this case the less radius of the parabola, whatever be its extent, must have one third of the length of the greater diameter; or, in other words, the most elevated point of the course of the arrow must be fifty feet. It is necessary too, that this point divide the diameter of the distance nearly into two equal parts; since, if the arrow surmount this point, it will go beyond

Q 3

yond, and, if it pass below it, will fall short, of the mark.

The way of life I have so long led has given me some experience of the theory as well as practice of this art. My most intimate friends know, that I have often brought down swallows flying, by blowing an arrow through a tube: and they have seen me many times cut a ball in two on the edge of a knife which I have set up as a mark. I also handle the bow with considerable dexterity: for in my childhood I learned the use of this weapon among the young Caribs at Surinam, and I afterwards improved myself in its use during my travels in Africa as often as I found an opportunity, and sometimes disputed the palm with the ablest Hottentot marksmen.

The savage knows nothing of the theory, of which I have just hinted at a few of the principles: but by practice and experience he acquires astonishing ability. What indeed may not be expected from people, who, having no means of defending their lives or procuring subsistence but their bow, accustom themselves to handle it from their earliest infancy?

I have

I have observed that the Hottentots on the east are in general very adroit in the use of the bow : but none of them equal the Houzouanas. With these the practice of the bow is become an art ; and this art is even a branch of their military exercise, as I had an opportunity of convincing myself by this shooting-match.

The mark was a black circular spot made with charcoal on the white inner bark of a large mimosa, which I caused to be divested of its outer rind. I left the candidates to fix among themselves the distance from which they would shoot, and this they ascertained by a shallow trench, which no one was allowed to overstep.

These preliminaries being settled, all ran to the appointed spot ; but without order, and uttering exclamations of joy, as if each were going to certain victory.

Every one then selected from his quiver the arrow which he thought fittest for securing the prize : and the precautions they took in making this choice, the care with which they examined their arrows one after another, and the attention with which they fitted them to

their bows and poised them in their hands, were very remarkable.

The arrow being selected, they placed it on their bow: then they would crouch down with their head between their knees like frogs, leap and spring from side to side, as if to avoid the arrows of their enemies, make feints, take aim at the mark, draw near the trench, recede from it, and take a hundred different attitudes, which at first appeared to me the tricks of a jack-pudding, but which were in reality employed for the purpose of estimating the situation and distance of the object.

Every instant I expected from their motions they were going to shoot: but suddenly they would retire back, begin again their movements and feints, and discharge their arrows when I least expected it. At length, when they had all shot for the first prize, I gave a knife to him whose arrow had come nearest to the centre of the mark.

The same proceeding took place for each of the other three prizes. Every time a knife was to be shot for, the remaining bowmen employed the same manœuvres: but, as the prizes diminished in number, they redoubled their ardour and



and activity ; and, during more than three quarters of an hour that the sport lasted, they displayed before me all the feints, evolutions, and stratagems, of their art of war.

This exercise did not end with the distribution of the four prizes. Those who were unsuccessful still continued to shoot ; and I could not observe without laughing, that several of them, after having hit the circle, were in a passion with themselves for having aimed so ill when there was something to be gained, and so well when it was to no purpose.

In my turn, to show them what I could do, I placed myself at the trench with my large carbine, and fired several balls, each of which hit the mark.

Not contented with showing them my own superiority, I was desirous of convincing them of that of my arms. For this purpose, I took aim at a rock four hundred paces distant. At every shot I struck off from it a splinter, and at every shot I observed the astonished savages seeking to divine from my countenance by what inconceivable magic I produced such an effect, so speedily and at so great a distance.

To heighten their astonishment, I placed  
them

them all in a line side by side, and, standing at a distance, I put into my carbine a large charge of powder and a ball with a hole through it; and then firing, I made the ball whizz over their heads.

The whizzing, which they heard before the report of the carbine, stupefied them with wonder. They doubted not but I could send a ball as far as I pleased, and that this had gone to take effect at an immeasurable distance.

These experiments, added to other exploits they had often seen me perform, such as bringing down small birds on the wing, and even beetles, gave them a high opinion of my superiority.

Having thus impressed on their minds an exalted idea of my power, I represented to them how prudently they had acted in receiving me with friendship, and how rash it would be in any of their hordes to provoke my wrath by offending me. I desired them to warn their countrymen of the risk they would run on such an occasion; but at the same time I assured them, that, wherever I met any of them, I should always endeavour to make them my friends, as I had acted by their horde.

Finally,

Finally, I reminded them of the services I had been so eager to render them, and warmly thanked them for those they had rendered me in their turn.

This produced the effect I expected. They all renewed their professions of friendship and attachment, both in their own name and that of their comrades. The women themselves pointing to the jewels and ornaments I had bestowed on them, gave me to understand, that they would consider it as a duty to wear them, that all the Houzouanas might learn to know the white man, the friend of their nation.

I was much flattered by these expressions of gratitude, from which I derived the more pleasure, as they proceeded from those who had not shared in the prizes of knives which I had so recently distributed.

As a compensation for this, I added liberally to the ornaments I had already bestowed on them, others of the same kind, with which they were highly pleased. The company of the women of my caravan had given them some taste for dress. They were proud of thus ornamenting themselves before their husbands, who

who seemed, on account of it, to like them the better ; and I am persuaded, that to the other Houzouana women of the country they would become objects of admiration and envy. Delightful amusement ! Enchanting moments ! In what a world, and under what laws, must I regret your loss !

I could have wished to reclaim the Hottentot from the wandering life he had embraced ; which I urged him to quit, offering to conduct him back to the plantations with me : but he steadily refused to comply with my solicitations. He had a wife and two young children, from whom he could not part ; and this motive rendered his determination respectable in my eyes. In that country the sentiments of nature are not learned from books, nor is it necessary to write a volume in order to show what is right and what is wrong. When we parted, the people of the horde pressed my hand, and even my cowards joined in the ceremony. Yet I perceived, on more faces than one, an expression of pleasure at being delivered from the burden of fear ; and that so many services, and so much friendship and confidence, had not been able totally to eradicate prejudice from every heart,



heart. Alas! how mischievous in its effects and how difficult to counteract is common fame!

For myself, who, far from fearing the Houzouanas, had felt pleasure from their society, and entertained an affection for them, I once more confess that I did not part from them without regret; that I found them an active, laborious, and intelligent race of men, ever ready to oblige in spite of obstacles, and superior to other savages both in courage and ability.

What indeed particularly inspired me with a predilection in their favour, was their open and smiling countenance. Such is the habitual state of their features, that the gloomy and dubious impression of uneasiness and mistrust is never perceptible on them. The Houzouana, it is true, has violent passions, and, when he is under their influence, they are depicted on his countenance in a forcible and striking manner: but the storm is of short duration; he soon comes to himself, and his face instantly resumes the expression of his frank, unsuspecting, and loyal mind.

Among all the other African nations, almost  
with-

without exception, I found an imbecile stupidity, which made them enraptured with every thing I carried with me for my use. The Houzouanas contemplated them with those emotions of curiosity which every production of industry would naturally excite in a people destitute of arts ; but this curiosity was neither stupid admiration nor the childish desire of savages in general.

Nothing filled them with real astonishment but my fire-arms. During the whole time they were with me, these were the subjects of their attention and discourse. But it is to be observed, I had endeavoured to inspire them with the greatest terror by displaying their effects. I never suffered them to touch my fuses, and I was particularly careful not to show them the mode of using them. When once they had imbibed the desire of possessing them, perhaps it would not be long before they would contrive means of procuring them ; and then how dangerous would be these mountaineers to the plantations, and even to the Cape itself ; since, secure from attack in their mountains, and indefatigable in their expeditions, their nocturnal and unexpected attacks render

render them already irresistible enemies! Often have I rejoiced that the nation was one of the poorest of Africa; and that, being destitute of every thing, it had nothing to barter by way of trade. But for this, such of the colonists who follow the occupation of traversing the deserts, would perhaps have penetrated as far as these people; perhaps would have supplied them with powder and fire-arms, and certainly would have instilled into them the desire of procuring them; and who can tell to what this desire would have led!

Yet these formidable people inspired me with more love and esteem than any other tribe in Africa. With them I would have undertaken without fear to traverse the whole of that quarter of the globe, had my good fortune permitted me to know them sooner: and if ever circumstances allow me to resume the project, which it has been so painful to me to relinquish, they are the only ones that shall be my companions in the enterprise, and to them alone will I direct my steps without delay.

From the pleasure which it still gives me to talk of them an idea may be formed of the pain  
I felt

I felt at their departure. During the remainder of the day, I experienced a wearisome void ; something seemed wanting to me ; and the satisfaction that their absence afforded to several of my Hottentots did but increase my vexation. They exulted as if they had carried their point against me : and fancied, now the Houzouanas were gone, they should become again as necessary to me as ever.

Night gave a little check to this insolent joy. At the close of day, we perceived fires at two or three leagues distance on our right ; and these fires abated their confidence and revived their fears. Probably they were signals made by the Houzouanas who had left me to inform their comrades of their situation. But the single idea of Houzouanas was sufficient to excite terror in my troop. My people had no doubt but it was a new horde, by which we should speedily be attacked ; and in consequence they all spent the night on the watch, tormenting and perplexing themselves with sinister conjectures. For my part, to punish them for their insolence, I resolved to leave them in their mistake. I even pretended to be of their opinion respecting the fires, and  
while



while they were kept awake by their fears, I retired to my tent to sleep in tranquillity.

This anxious night served but to increase their impatience to return home. Had I listened to them, I should have set off the next morning the shortest way to my camp at Orange-River. But I had not yet forgotten the pleasant days I had spent on the upper part of this river, and I was not desirous of quitting so hastily the banks of a stream, near which I had procured so many birds for my collection, and the water and pastures of which could alone recover my cattle from the fatigue they had undergone. I was resolved, therefore, to follow its course for some time; and the very next day I spent six hours in tracing its windings.

This excursion afforded me several new species of birds, and particularly a variety of the touraco, different from that which I saw in the Auteniqua country. The succeeding days were equally fortunate, and added alike to my pleasures, my acquisitions, and my discoveries.

In one of my hunts I killed a monstrous boar, altogether different from any known species.

cies. Its snout instead of being taper and in the form of a proboscis, is on the contrary very broad and square at the end. It has small eyes, at a very little distance from each other, level with the surface, and near the top of the forehead. On each cheek a very thick cartilaginous skin projects horizontally, being about three inches long and as many broad. At first sight you would be tempted to take these excrescences for the ears; particularly as the real ears of the animal, sticking as it were to the neck which is very short, are partly concealed by an enormous mane, the bristles of which, in colour red, brown, and greyish, are sixteen inches in length on the shoulders. Directly below these false ears is a bony protuberance on each side, projecting more than an inch, serving the animal to strike with to the right and left. The boar has, besides, four tusks, of the nature of ivory, two in each jaw: the upper ones are seven or eight inches long; very thick at the base and terminating in an obtuse point, grooved, and rising perpendicularly as they issue from the lips: the lower ones are much smaller, and so close to the upper ones when the mouth is shut, that they  
appear



LARGE-SNOUTED BOAR.





appear as one. The head is a truly hideous object. It is scarcely less so than that of the hippopotamus, to which at first view it appears to have a striking resemblance. Systematists, accustomed to view nature only according to rules established by themselves, will be far from acknowledging this animal to be a boar : for, not to mention its large snout, it wants incisive teeth in both jaws. Notwithstanding its wide muzzle, it ploughs up the earth to seek for roots, on which it feeds. It is very active, though large and bulky ; running with such speed, that the Hottentots give it the name of the runner. Some future day I shall return to this interesting quadruped : and in the mean time I shall here give a plate of a young one which I have in my collection\*.

Having seen neither the mouth nor the source of Fish-River, I cannot speak with certainty of its situation, and must rely on sea-

\* Buffon has given a figure of this Cape boar from professor Allamand, in his Supplement to his History of Quadrupeds; vol. v, plate 11; of the duodecimo edition : but nothing like the head of this animal is discoverable in the figure, as all its characteristics have been omitted by the draughtsman.

men and geographers, at least for what regards the place where it pours itself into the sea. I shall only remark, that, in a country so irregular as Africa, it is very difficult to know a river which runs any considerable way. At one time, piercing through steep mountains or losing itself under rocks; at another, falling down from them in cascades, frequently perhaps in diverging branches, which, when they meet, take a contrary direction, and return back towards its source; it is by no means easy to trace it amid so many obstacles. To succeed in this, I know but one method, which would be to set out from the source of the river, and thence to travel constantly along its banks, without once losing sight of it. But who would attempt such an enterprize? And, were it attempted, would it always be practicable?

At my third encampment by this river, my Nimiquas recollected a chain of very lofty mountains, the pasturage of which they highly extolled; and added, that on this account there was almost always a horde of their countrymen stationed there. These praises were not without design, and this design it was easy to guess; but, as it accorded with my own, I  
made

made no difficulty in acceding to it. Accordingly I decamped, and directed my course towards the mountains. After two days short journey, we arrived in a pleasant valley, shaded by a prodigious number of mimosas in full bloom, and where we found several herds of cattle, which denoted some Hottentots to be in the neighbourhood.

The Nimiquas having advanced with Klaas to announce my coming, we soon saw the whole horde approaching. At this sight my people expressed the highest joy. You would have said, that, after having escaped from assassins, they had found protectors to place their lives in a state of security. They congratulated each other, squeezed the hands of the new comers, pressed them to their breasts, and overwhelmed them with expressions of friendship. Had they been their acquaintance or relations, they could not have displayed more transport. The beauty of the pastures, which every where covered the feet of the mountains, made us resolve to spend a few days near the horde.

When my tent was erected, the chief of the horde came to see me, and give me very

agreeable news of my camp on Orange-River, where no disaster had happened during my absence, as he learned from the people of another horde, who had gone thither to exchange cattle for tobacco. He would gladly have sent thither some of his people also for the same purpose, as there was not a morsel of tobacco in his kraal ; but an alarming circumstance kept him in continual fear, and prevented him from weakening his company, which was not numerous, by detaching from it a party of men.

A lion and lioness had for some time taken up their abode near the horde, in an impenetrable thicket which he pointed out to me. The horde had endeavoured to dislodge them, but in vain ; and they still retained possession of their fortrefs. Every night they issued forth to attack not the herd only, but even the men ; and the very night before my arrival they had carried off an ox. Full of hope and confidence in my fire-arms, the chief congratulated himself on my coming, and requested me to employ my weapons to deliver them from such a scourge, not doubting but I should succeed if I would make the attempt.



Of the two obligations that might be conferred on these good people, one was not in my power, that of supplying them with tobacco. My people had been at half their usual allowance of this article for a month past, and even at that rate I had not enough to answer the demand of my journey: of course I was not willing, by an improper display of liberality, to give them reason to accuse me of depriving them of their due, for the purpose of gratifying strangers at their expence.

With respect to the lions, it was more easy for me to render the horde the service they wanted; but this required much prudence and circumspection. Their obstinately persevering to remain in the thicket, notwithstanding all that had been done to drive them out, gave me reason to suspect they had young ones; and this circumstance rendered the attack a business of no small danger.

These animals, at all times formidable, have at such periods a fierceness that nothing can resist. Animated by the necessity of defending and procuring food for their young, they dread no danger, and would face a whole  
R 4 army.

army. It is not courage they then possess—it is raging madness.

Nevertheless I promised to attack them the next day, and engaged at least to drive them away, if I could not destroy them. Considering, however, the closeness of the thicket and the difficulty of the attack, I required, exclusive of all my own people whom I intended to employ, that those of the horde should also join me. During the night we surrounded ourselves with very large fires, and discharged from time to time our muskets. But these precautions were unnecessary; for the lions, having the remains of their ox to devour, did not appear, though we heard them during a great part of the night.

At break of day, the men of the horde were ready, armed with arrows and assagays, and waited nothing but my orders to proceed to the attack. Even the women and children would be of the party; less indeed to fight than to satisfy their curiosity and enjoy our victory. I heard the lions still growling in their strong hold; but the increasing light soon silenced them. The sun appeared; and the  
profound

profound silence that then prevailed was the signal for our departure.

The thicket was about two hundred paces long and sixty wide. It occupied a spot sunk lower than the adjacent ground, so that it was to be entered on a descent. The whole consisted of bushes and briars, except some mimosas which rose from its centre. These trees, could I have reached them, would have afforded me an advantagous position for the attack. On their summits I should have been secure, and might have shot the two animals at my ease: but, not knowing exactly the situation of their lair, it would have been highly imprudent in me to traverse the thicket, in order to reach these trees, since I should thereby have exposed myself to the danger of being seized by the way.

Unable to attack these formidable beasts in their retrenchments, all that remained was to tempt them out of their fort; for it was difficult, not to say impossible, to come at them through the briars and bushes that covered them, and my marksmen would vainly have attempted to manage or present with any aim, when thus entangled, their long fuses. I therefore determined to place them and the  
other

other savages at certain distances from each other upon the eminences all round the wood, so that the lions should be unable to reach the plain without being perceived ; persuaded that in the open country we should be the stronger party and finally triumphant.

None of the savages daring to enter the wood, we resolved to force all the oxen of the horde into it. Accordingly, when we were at our posts, with our guns ready to fire, we drove the oxen before us, compelling them by our voices and blows to enter the thicket. At the same time my dogs opened, and I fired off several pistols to frighten the lions and make them come out.

The oxen, scenting their enemies, soon rushed back with affright, and returned towards us ; but our cries, the barking of the dogs, and the report of our arms, compelled them to re-enter the thicket, which they did in a sort of fury, jostling one another, and bellowing in a fearful manner,

The lions on their side were roused at the sight of danger, and their rage vented itself in dreadful roars. We heard them in every part of the thicket, without their daring to shew them-



selves any where, or advance upon us. The conflict of two armies could not be more loud than their threatening voices, confounded with the cries of men and dogs, and the furious lowing of the oxen. This hideous concert continued great part of the morning, and we began to despair of the success of our enterprise, when suddenly I heard, on the side opposite to me, piercing cries instantly followed by the report of a gun, which made me tremble. But shouts of joy immediately succeeded, and, passing from one to another along the circle till they came to me, announced a victory. I ran to the place, and found the lioness expiring. Klaas, who was stationed at that post, had fired and shot her through the body. Her dugs, though without milk, were swelled and pendent, which indicated she had young ones, and proved that I had not been mistaken in my conjecture.

It came into my head to employ her carcase for the purpose of enticing them out of the thicket. With this view I ordered it to be drawn to a certain distance, not doubting but the young ones would come in quest of their dam,

dam, and that the male would probably follow either to avenge or defend them.

I collected at my new post some of my hunters from the right and left, and we retired to the distance of thirty paces from the carcase, ready to fire if the animals advanced. But my stratagem was unsuccessful, and we spent several hours waiting for them in vain.

The whelps, indeed, uneasy at not seeing their mother, ran about the thicket, growling on all sides. The male too, on being separated from her, redoubled his roarings and his rage. We saw him for a moment appear at the edge of the thicket, his eyes sparkling, his mane erect, and lashing his sides with his tail. But unfortunately he was out of shot of my carbine; and one of my marksmen, who was posted nearer, fired and missed him. At this he retired; and, whether he feared to attack so numerous a body of men, or was unwilling to leave his young, or had received some slight wound, he appeared no more. Though animals of this species, as I have already observed, are more fierce and intrepid when they have young than at any other period, yet the males  
are

are not so much so as the females—a fact well known to the savages.

After waiting a long time to no purpose, and despairing of the success of my stratagem, I resolved to return to my former plan of attack. In consequence I sent all the people to their posts, and we again attempted to drive the oxen into the thicket, in order to dislodge the remainder of the family. But they were too much frightened. They all refused to proceed, and I was obliged to give up the design; though my dogs, animated by the blood of the lioness, which they had scented, opened with great ardour, and showed much eagerness for the sport.

We had spent a considerable part of the day in the chase; the sun was declining; and it would become more dangerous. I deemed it prudent, therefore, to think of retreating, and to defer our final victory till the next day.

The savages conveyed the lioness to the kraal, for the purpose of feasting on her: but, as I was desirous of her skin, I directed this to be first taken off. She was four feet four inches and half [about four feet eight inches English]

English] high, to the top of the shoulder, and ten feet eight inches [eleven feet four inches] long, from the point of the nose to the extremity of the tail.

When the animal was flayed, Klaas very naturally threw the skin over his shoulders to carry it to the kraal, whither he was accompanied with shouts by all the horde. He himself trod like a hero. I observed this new Alcides; and, distant as I was from the lions of Nemea, the resemblance was so striking, that I caught myself marching gravely in the midst of this renewal of the Grecian festival. If my Klaas obtained not all the honours of the son of Alcmena, it was apparently because a more powerful deity had directed his arm. I too had some share in the business; the plan of the attack was mine, and in consequence I was loaded with thanks and praises.

The chief requested me to accept four sheep and a couple of oxen in the name of the horde, as a testimony of its gratitude. The sheep I immediately killed, to add to the entertainment which the lionsess was to furnish: but the two oxen I gave up to Klaas, who in fact had well earned them. At first he refused, and per-

sisted



sisted in their being mine. But when I urged to him, that they were presented on account of the death of the lioness, and that this death was his work, he no longer hesitated to accept them.

This feast was the more agreeable, as, in part, it consisted of the animal which had occasioned so much destruction. I had certainly not the same desire for its flesh as the rest of the guests; yet I was induced to taste, but found it inferior to that of the tiger.

After the repast came the amusements. The company danced and sung all night; and their revelry, which did not allow me a moment's sleep, served also to remind me of the Nemean sports.

During the night I heard nothing either of the lion or the whelps: but this I ascribed to the noisy mirth of my savages; and indeed had all the lions of the country assembled in the thicket to roar in concert, I know not whether their voices would not have been drowned in the uproar of the feast. There was another reason, however, for this silence. The male, affrighted by the dangers he had run, availed himself of the darkness of the night

night to retire with his family; and in the morning, when we returned to the chace, we found the thicket deserted.

From the first movements of my dogs when they entered the bushes, and their manner of hunting, I perceived that we were too late. To be certain, however, I fired off a pistol a few times, hoping that the animals, if they were still there, would be roused at the report, and soon cause themselves to be heard, either by their growling, or the stir they would make in the bushes.

This preliminary having produced no signs of any thing being present, we cautiously advanced into the thicket, where we found the marks only of the spoil that had been made by this hungry family. On all sides were seen bones scattered about or lying in heaps; and the sight of this charnel-house, reminding the horde of the losses it had experienced, each began to relate and lament his own.

In the mean time I employed myself in tracing the footsteps of the lion and the whelps, to judge of the bulk of the one, and the number and size of the others. Though there are instances of a lioness having three young

ones at a litter, this appeared to have had but two; which I had reason to suppose were equal at least to my great dog Yager, who was as high as my middle, and consequently they were already formidable, and capable of doing considerable mischief.

To judge of the old lion from the print of his foot, which was one third larger than that of the lioness, he must have been of the largest size.

Some critic, I know not who, amusing himself with some animadversions upon me in the *Journal de Paris*, May 25, 1788, places me "with a lion face to face," and then pompously adds, "that we examined each other with haughty looks, but my intrepid courage at length obliged the animal to take to his heels."

The attitude is fine, no doubt: but, when he gave me such a powerful look, he should not have forgotten to bestow on me the club and the strength of Hercules. Whatever my critic may think, it is certain, that the first reflection of any man, however brave, unless at the same time he be a fool or a madman, when he finds himself before a formidable

enemy, is to compare his strength with that of his antagonist ; and, if he find them very unequal, the danger to which he is exposed must necessarily have its weight with him. This at least I have always experienced, and certainly I do not think myself more of a coward than another man. Accordingly, whenever I have found myself “ face to face ” with an elephant, a rhinoceros, a tiger, a lion, or the like, I confess, notwithstanding my confidence in my weapons, far from feeling myself, at the first instant, totally devoid of alarm : I have always experienced a violent palpitation, a sensation closely allied to fear. But this is of short duration, and has never deterred me from the attack, well assured of the superiority given me by my prudence and arms. Then, laying aside every idea of danger, I have marched straight forward to my enemy, however formidable he may be, and, if a wild beast, have thought only of killing, wounding, or at least putting him to flight.

To wait in ambush for a lion, and fire at him as he passes by, is an enterprise not without danger ; but to attack in “ face ” a lioness attended by her whelps and their father, and in  
her



her impenetrable retreat, would be rash even to madness, without previously securing every kind of assistance that can command success. And even this would be unpardonable, unless required by urgent necessity.

Savages know by experience the peril of such enterprises, and therefore never settle in a place where they suspect there are any whelps. Woe betide the horde that may be near them ! Almost every night their herds will be attacked. It is a tribute they must necessarily pay, and from which they will seldom endeavour to guard themselves, choosing rather to wait with patience till the young family, ceasing to be a burden to their parents, shall go and fix themselves elsewhere.

The horde near this thicket would never have ventured to propose to me such an attack, but for their high confidence in my fire-arms ; and I, notwithstanding the assistance of my hunters and my numerous company, would not have hesitated to refuse, if, when asking this service of me as an extraordinary favour, they had not consented to share with us the whole of the danger.

These were my motives for adopting the

resolution I took, and I had every reason to congratulate myself on my success; since, of the four beasts we had to destroy, the most formidable was slain, and the three others took flight; while, to increase my happiness, not a single person was wounded, nor even one of the oxen that were driven into the thicket. Had we killed the lion first, we should probably have destroyed the whole family; but, if one of the whelps had fallen a sacrifice before its mother, there is little doubt but it would have cost the life of one of us, since the event would have so enraged the lioness, that she would have braved every danger, and rushed instantly upon the party. Accordingly I had strictly enjoined every one not to fire at the young ones till the old ones were killed.

Satisfied with having delivered the horde from this scourge, and having no other motive to remain with them, I fixed the next day but one for my departure. This declaration was by no means agreeable to my people. They had found among these Nimiquas the same easy and compliant manners as they had before experienced in some other hordes, which induced them to wish for a longer stay. When  
they

they parted from the Houzouanas, they had desired to return to the camp at Orange-River the shortest way; and now they asked to remain where we were, without alleging a single reason for it. But such requests were little calculated to have any weight with me. I was not a man to change my purposes to gratify the inclinations of people of whom I had so much reason to complain; and I therefore declared that I should persist in my intentions.

There were two different ways to Orange-River, between which I had to choose. One was to proceed to the west till I reached the sea-side, proceed along the coast to the mouth of the river, and then travel up its banks to the camp of the giraffe. For the other, I had only to follow the direction of the mountains; and, as they ran south, thereby pointing out my course, this would be the most certain as well as the shortest and easiest.

I was, however, more inclined to the former, because, by travelling along the river's side, I should discover its course, which I much wished. But, short as I was of tobacco and other similar stores, how prevail on persons already murmuring at the diminution of their

allowance, and who would soon be reduced to a total stoppage of it, to take so long a round? How induce the Greater Nimi-quas, now on the point of rejoining their horde, to turn their backs, and wander from it anew? Above all, with such a large train and so many cattle, how undertake to traverse plains, neither more rugged nor difficult, it is true, than that we had already crossed, but in which, instead of the indefatigable Houzouanas, I had attendants who, for the most part, were of little use to me, and almost all of whom had forfeited my confidence?

By taking the other road, I learned from the chief of the horde, that, after two days march, I should fall in with another of this nation; that this would conduct me to a third; and that thus it would be easy for me to proceed from horde to horde with sure guides as far as Orange-River. As he offered to send some of his own people to conduct me to the first, I accepted his offer, and departed with the more satisfaction, as I reflected, that it would be in my power when I arrived at the camp, if circumstances permitted it, to resume my scheme of tracing the course of the stream.

Most



Most of my people were so enfeebled by the pleasures of every kind in which they had indulged during their residence with the horde, that many, unable to support the fatigues of the march, remained behind at different distances. At length the number of these loiterers became so considerable, that I was obliged to halt, after travelling six leagues, in an angle of the mountains where the chain, altering its direction, turned to the south-east. The horde we had quitted had previously resided here, so that the pasture had been eaten up; and we found only the first shoots of the new grafs.

Here, after having long ceased to see any giraffes, I met with them again for the first time. My guides assured me, the farther I went to the west, the more scarce they would become; and I could easily believe them, from the small number that appeared in the present instance, compared with what I had seen to the east.

On my return to the Cape, Pinar told me, that, after we separated, having travelled up Orange-River for several days, he had all the way seen giraffes, though never on the left bank;

nor indeed have I ever heard of any making their appearance there: whence I conclude, that in this southern part of Africa the district inhabited by these animals is a space of about four degrees, that is to say, the interval between the two rivers, Fish and Orange river.

Not that they have been exclusively confined to this spot by nature, and are unable to exist in any other. On the contrary, they have been seen at Galam on the Senegal, three hundred leagues from its mouth; at least I have heard so from people of credit. We read in ancient travellers, that they were to be found in India: and if the moderns do not speak of them there, it is because the breed is destroyed, or become less numerous, and retired into the deserts. Bruce also mentions a giraffe which he saw in Abyssinia. I suspect, however, that it was some other quadruped, and not a giraffe, since he tells us that these animals have the horns of an antelope.

Resuming our journey the next day, we perceived about noon a herd of horned cattle, which announced the horde we were seeking. But at sight of us their keepers were alarmed,

and fled towards the kraal, driving their cattle before them as fast as possible.

This did not astonish me, and was what I expected ; since, independently of our number, our appearance also was terrifying.— Though it was the month of March, and the heat began to abate, it was yet sufficient to incommode us, so that we continued to wear those umbrellas of which I have spoken above, and which, from their unusual figure, must have rendered us so many scarecrows.

I dispatched my guides after the fugitives, to remove their apprehensions, and stop them before they communicated the alarm to the horde. Accordingly they waited for me, testified their friendship, and went to acquaint their comrades with my arrival. Several of my people went with them, and I shortly followed ; but I stopped and encamped at some distance from the kraal ; for I had not yet forgotten the noisy nights spent at the preceding horde, and was desirous of being permitted to sleep at this in quiet.

Men, women, and children, came all to see me. The savage knows scarcely more than two sentiments toward strangers—either extreme

treme mistrust or unbounded confidence. Giving himself up entirely to the one or the other, he admits no intermediate shades in his intercourse. Those cunning artifices which we term prudence and circumspection are unknown to him. Thus he shows himself exactly as he is; so that you cannot be mistaken in his conduct, and are warned to be on your guard, or invited to trust in him with security.

I proposed for the next day to hunt giraffes. All the horde joined in this diversion, and were employed in driving the animals towards us. We were so fortunate as to kill a female, which measured in height about fourteen feet four inches [English], and, according to the savages, it was one of the largest size. This female we supposed by the appearance of the teeth to be very old, and its colour accordingly approached very near that of the males. I was desirous of finding one with her foal, as perhaps I might have caught the young one alive; and I was in hopes this would have had one in her womb, but my hopes were disappointed.

In proportion as I drew near to my camp, I remembered the need I had of procuring oxen.

This



This horde had many; but I could procure only seven, for want of merchandise. The people wished for tobacco and dacca (the leaves of hemp); commodities with which I was unable to supply them. I had still a tolerable quantity of beads, but upon these they set very little value.

Fortunately the women observed among my wares some red and white beads about the size of a hazel nut, which pleased them so much by their variegated colour, that they would have given for them all they possessed. The men too appeared equally fond of them. These, therefore, a dozen or two of large nails, and some brass wire for bracelets, answered my purpose of barter.

To the greater part of my readers, perhaps, these remarks will seem trivial; but to travellers who undertake, like me, to visit Africa, they are of great importance, and, on that account, I ought by no means to omit them.

On quitting the horde, I dismissed the guides who had conducted me thither, and took others to show me the way to the next. We bent our course to the east, following the direction of the mountains; but an accident happened

pened on the road, which had like to have done much mischief, or even cost me my life.

One of my oxen was laden with the boxes which contained the articles of traffic; and one of these boxes, probably not well fastened, made such a noise by its shaking that the animal became restless. Teased by the continual clacking of the box, he made an effort to shake it off, and at last succeeded; but the others, loosened and dragged down by it in its fall, fell likewise, and made such a clatter, that the ox and all that were near him, being terrified, betook themselves to flight.

The alarm communicated itself to the rest, and all my animals, goats, sheep, and horses, scampered off each a different way. In a moment the whole caravan was in confusion, and the drivers themselves, dragged along by their beasts, which they could not stop, were dispersed with them.

The most distant of the fugitives was the pack-ox that first took flight; but, hampered in his course by the straps of his baggage, and not being able to disengage himself from them, he had stopped, and was plunging and bellow-  
ing

ing with rage. I galloped up to him, with the design to drive him towards the caravan; but he answered my endeavours by a stroke of his horn, which gored my horse in the flank and tore his leg; and the horse, giving a sudden spring, fell down on his side, threw me ten paces from him, and ran away.

Fortunately, in my fall, I retained fast hold of my gun; and this circumstance saved my life. The ox rushed upon me, with his nose to the ground, ready to gore me with his horns and toss me into the air, when I cocked my piece, and, by one of the luckiest shots I ever fired, laid him dead at the distance only of a few yards from me.

The animal was the property of one of the Kaminouquas who attended me. At this moment his master came up out of breath to seize him and bring him back; but he arrived only in time to see him yield his last breath. At this sight the poor Kaminouqua was distracted; he began to weep like a child, and to launch out in praise of his ox, which he said was the best and the most dear to him he had ever possessed, and that he should regret the loss during his whole life.

However, when I promised to give him  
another

another, or to pay him according to his own valuation, his tears were dried up at once, his lamentation ceased; and so speedily was this inconsolable man reconciled to his loss, that, having called some of his comrades to assist him, he set himself instantly to work to slay and cut into quarters his best friend, in order to feast on him the very same day.

In the mean time I directed my scattered merchandize to be collected. This occupied so much time, that we were able to advance only five leagues the whole day. The next we made very little more progress; but this was owing to an accident of a different kind, to one of those terrible south-east winds, which are the most surprising phenomena and terrible plagues of Africa.

It began to threaten us in the morning; and soon increasing every moment in violence, it overwhelmed us with such clouds of sand and gravel, that we were absolutely blinded, and prevented from advancing. Its fury, increased by the resistance of the lofty mountains to the east, through the defiles of which it had to force its passage, became at length so great that we were obliged to halt.

Having unloaded the oxen, we placed our



baggage in heaps, covering them at the same time with large stones, to prevent their being blown away.

As it was impossible for us to erect a tent, we had no shelter, and our only resource was to sit or lie down on the ground, inhaling the sand by which we were blinded.

In the evening we surrounded ourselves with large fires as usual; but, the wind continuing, the wood was so quickly consumed, that we were obliged to pass three-fourths of the night without any. Yet we had every thing to fear from the wild beasts, for we had perceived the footsteps of several on our road; and it would have been vain to have endeavoured to keep them off by the report of our guns, for the wind was so loud that they could not have been heard to any purpose.

The night was spent in fear and apprehension, and we waited the return of day with impatience: but, far from its restoring tranquillity to the atmosphere, the violence of the wind increased as the sun rose above the horizon; and though the sky was without a cloud, the face of the sun was obscured by the columns of sand,

sand, which crowding on each other, darkened the atmosphere as they passed over our head.

What we experienced was neither a storm, nor a tempest, nor a hurricane : it was a true and terrible whirlwind (*typhoon*). Paterfon, who experienced a similar one beyond Orange-River, says, that the trees round him were torn up by the roots. Near us there were no trees ; but I saw the wind, as it whirled round, form deep cavities in the ground, carry the earth and sand to a considerable distance, and then let it fall in showers on our heads. All the victuals we dressed were so covered with sand, that it was impossible to eat them.

To this insupportable constraint was added the uneasiness given me by our herds, which, collected in a mass, remained motionless without any desire to eat ; and, what was still worse, there was not a drop of water near the camp. Such were the vexatious consequences of our situation ; nor, obliged to stop on a sudden in my way, was it in my power to choose a better halting-place.

About noon, finding the wind did not abate, we resolved to resume our journey, and proceed

ceed towards a cluster of mountains to the south-east. The horde to which I was travelling was nearly three leagues distant; and to reach it we must have marched directly against the wind, which would not have been practicable.

I gave orders, therefore, for our departure. My baggage, which was now buried in sand, was uncovered; the oxen were loaded, and we set off. But though we had the wind a little on one side of us, it greatly retarded our progress. My savages endeavoured in vain to drive the oxen in a direct line toward the mountains: the wind was so impetuous, that the poor beasts, as well as ourselves, in spite of all their efforts, gradually declined to leeward; so that our backs were frequently turned to the path we intended to pursue.

What I here relate will by no means surprise those who have travelled in the southern parts of Africa. They know the terrible effects of the south-east wind; and they are not ignorant, that, if certain districts, and more especially certain mountains, are destitute of every kind of vegetation, and consequently uninhabitable,

bitable, it is because they are particularly exposed to it.

At length, however, towards evening, it abated ; the weather once more became calm, and we had a peaceful night. This respite was a real happiness to us, and saved the lives of our cattle. The next morning before day-break we resumed our march towards a Nimiqua horde, where we had scarcely arrived when the wind began again to blow as violently as ever.

When I approached the kraal, I was not a little surprised to find myself received as an old acquaintance. This surprise was renewed on my being told, that, about two months before, several of my people had come thither from my camp at Orange-River to purchase oxen ; and that the chief had very lately sent some of his horde to them to procure tobacco and hardware, which he showed me, and which I perceived to have been mine.

It was not above a fortnight at most that these men had returned ; and I learned from them news of Swanepoel and his comrades. After having expected me with impatience,  
they



they began to be uneasy about me. However, the place, since my departure, was totally changed. The rains had covered the ground with verdure, and the banks of the river were every where embellished with fine pastures. Accordingly Swanepoel had sent for the oxen I had left at Bernfry's horde, and had formed an enclosure for them, together with those which he himself had purchased, and such as I had bought on my way at different hordes, which had been faithfully conveyed to him according to the engagements of the venders.

The name of Bernfry, which now struck my ear for the first time these four months, seemed to presage some fatal news to me. My foreboding was too true. I was informed, that this abominable knave, enraged at my not having confided to him the superintendance of my camp during my absence, had revenged himself by the most flagitious conduct.

When Swanepoel went with some men to the neighbouring hordes to traffic for oxen, he had offered to accompany them under pretence of acting as a guide; and the result of these journeys was, that every thing bought for me was paid for at double its value, in conse-

quence of his previous information to the fellers.

Supposing me still resolved to return to Orange-River only to begin a new journey, and thinking that my plan would be rendered impracticable if I were in want of articles of trade, he had endeavoured to exhaust my store; and certainly, if circumstances had not previously determined me to return to the Cape, this treacherous scheme was very capable of compelling me to do so.

To acquit myself of my debt to the Kaminnouqua, whose ox I had killed a few days before, I now purchased one, and delivered it to him. His I distributed among the horde, as the haste with which it was cut up had prevented us from taking the necessary precautions for keeping it.

The wind continued to blow for three whole days; and, as I had resolved not to resume my journey till it was completely abated, I remained at this place. This delay, however, was not lost time to me; though the wind incommoded us much by the situation of the mountains on the declivity of which we were encamped, as from these it rushed down upon

us with violence. I went out several times with my gun, and with some success; for I procured for my collection two charming species of animals with which I was before unacquainted.

One, of the squirrel genus, but longer and more slender than the Canadian squirrel described by Buffon, is a new species. It is isabella-coloured on the back and sides; the tail partly the same, partly white; the belly white; and it has a band of white also the whole length of the flank on each side. Its hair resembles the quills of the porcupine rather than the fur of the squirrel. That on the tail, which is long and bushy, has a degree of flexibility in consequence of its length; but that on the body is hard and stiff, so much so, that, when struck with a stick, the hairs give a kind of rustling sound against each other, like the porcupine's quills. All the movements of the animal, like those of the squirrel, are light and graceful; and like the squirrel also, when running, it spreads its fine tail. The Greater Nimiquas call it *agwimp*. I killed a male and female at one shot. The female differs only in being a little less, and having a colour more

approaching to grey. In my description of the quadrupeds of Africa, I shall give a representation of this pretty little animal.

The second quadruped, which at that time was totally unknown to me, was a species of *viverra*; at least so I judged it to be. My Hottentots of the colony all recognized it as a *muys-bond* (mouse-dog), a general name among the inhabitants of the Cape for all the little carnivorous quadrupeds. They also assured me, that it was very common in many places in the colony; yet I do not recollect that I ever met with it there. Its body was the size of that of a kitten six months old: it had a very large nose, the upper jaw exceeding the lower near two thirds of an inch in length, and forming a sort of moveable snout, resembling that of the coati of Guiana. The fore feet were armed with four large claws, very sharp and curved; the hind ones have each five, but they are short and blunt. All the fur on the upper part of the body is marked with cross bands of a deep brown colour, on a ground of light brown with which many white hairs are intermixed. The lower part of the body and insides of the legs are of  
a red-



a reddish white. The tail, which is very fleshy, and more than two thirds longer than the body, is black at the tip, and the rest brown, intermixed with white hairs.

This animal employs its fore paws to dig very deep holes in the earth, in which it remains concealed during the day, not going out till sun-set in quest of food.

In the same district I caught a very singular bat, which one evening entered my tent, and extinguished my candle by endeavouring to perch on it. This species has a sufficient claim to the title of *oreillar*, for it has four ears, or at least the external part of four ears, each ear being double; the outer fold, which serves as a covering to the inner, is very ample, being two inches eight lines high, and nearly as broad when stretched out. On the nose also a membrane stands erect, one inch four lines in height, which might be taken for another ear, as it has exactly the shape of one. This membrane, as well as the ears and wings of the animal, are of a rusty red, paler below than above. The body is only three inches long, and is covered with very fine greyish hair. Its width, from the tip of one wing to that of the other,

is eight inches. The reader will pardon me for inserting these trifling details of measurement, of which I am not more fond than himself; but they appeared to me necessary here, to convey an accurate idea of the extraordinary length of the ears of this animal, which are certainly larger in proportion than those of any other we are acquainted with, since they are only four lines \* shorter than the body itself.

When the wind had entirely subsided, the wild animals, and particularly the isabella-coloured zebras, re-appeared in the plain. I had long been very eager to procure one of these, but, notwithstanding all my efforts, had never been able to succeed. I again employed a whole day in hunting them, and even chased them to the distance of more than seven leagues from the horde; but I found it impossible to overtake them, and, after a great deal of useless fatigue, was obliged to relinquish the pursuit.

This wild animal, which will not suffer itself to be approached, is the only one I saw in Africa, a few birds of lofty flight excepted, that I was unable to procure. Never having had it in my possession, I can say no more of it than what I have already written, and I shall

\* The French divide the inch into twelve lines. T.

continue to give it the name of isabella zebra, till some more fortunate traveller may bestow on it another appellation.

I did not quit the horde without taking guides. They conducted me, by a journey of seven or eight leagues, to the dry bed of a periodical river, on the banks of which they left me, and which they assured me was that Lion-River, which I had crossed farther to the east at my first departure. If it be difficult in Africa to be certain of the course of a flowing river, it is still more so to ascertain that of one that is dry. I have trusted to the savages for the name of this, and I have laid it down in my map on their authority. I much doubt, however, its being the same river: but it may possibly be another to which the appellation of Lion has been given; as, in fact, in that part of Africa there are many brooks or rivers that bear this denomination. Besides, it is enough for a planter to meet with a lion, an elephant, a buffalo, or any other animal, on the bank of a river, to give it immediately its name. Thus it is we find at the Cape of Good Hope several Elephant-Rivers, Buffalo-Rivers, and Lion-Rivers, as well as many

Zout-

*Zout-Rivieren* (Salt-Rivers), and the like ; which may easily lead to geographical errors, particularly in so mountainous a country, where it is impossible to follow a river along its banks through its whole course.

From the banks of the one in question, we proceeded the shortest way to Orange-River. It was midnight when we arrived at it ; but the joy of having at length reached the river on the borders of which my camp was pitched, diffused throughout my caravan a sort of delirious ecstacy, which continued till dawn and prevented us from taking the smallest repose. Nothing was talked of but the moment of arrival. Had I listened to the general voice of impatience, I should have departed instantly. Already they thought themselves within a few steps of the camp ; yet we had still a long way to travel thither, though we had nothing to do but to ascend the river keeping along its banks.

The great number of trees and bushes by the river's side obliged my caravan to keep at a little distance from it ; while I and my hunters, in the hope of killing some hippopotamuses, never quitted it—some proceeding along the right bank, others along the left.

March-



Marching in this order, we encamped twice. At length, on the third day, the Greater Nimi-quas, finding they were near their horde, asked leave to quit me. Certain, however, that it would give them pleasure, I resolved to accompany them, and return them as it were myself into the hands of their comrades.

This was not all. Curious to know the effect that the surprise of our return would produce in the kraal, I prohibited any one from advancing to announce me; and in fact they were so far from expecting us, and our arrival was so sudden, that when they saw us they were all struck dumb with astonishment.

To this motionless surprise succeeded cries and shouts, with jumping, skipping, and all those irregular movements with which savages usually express the transports of joy. The whole kraal was soon in confusion; every one congratulated himself on finding again comrades, friends, relations, whom he had believed to be lost, and despaired of ever seeing more. They were hugged and smothered with caresses; while, confessing in their simplicity that I had led them to the world's end, they heightened

ened the general intoxication, by relating the marvels they had witnessed.

Their narrative was so interesting, that it brought the whole crowd around them. Interrupted every moment by twenty different persons with as many different questions, they resumed their discourse, added, exaggerated, confounded circumstances and adventures together, and rendered their tale so confused, that it excited universal rapture from the very circumstance of its being incomprehensible.

This continued the whole day, and was interrupted only by the noisy diversions of the night. I could scarcely hope to enjoy the refreshment of sleep in the midst of people whose tumultuous uproar is always proportionate to the pleasure they feel, and among whom a festival has the appearance of an alarm and battle. Without attempting, therefore, to retire to my tent, I remained among them, and thought only of enjoying the spectacle it exhibited.

The narrators of what they had seen particularly engaged my attention. Knowing enough of the language to understand them, they amused me extremely. Though they  
related

related only events that were known to me, their uncultivated minds interlarded them with such extraordinary remarks and circumstances, embellished them with such sublime and extravagant poetical figures, and gave them such a new and whimsical air, that I fancied myself listening to fabulous narrations. Never before had I tasted a similar pleasure, and I frankly confess that this was one of the most pleasing nights that either of my journeys afforded.

At sun-rise, when every one retired to sleep, I took my gun, and went to try my success in the neighbourhood. I found nothing to add to my collection; but chance afforded me an extraordinary shot, such as perhaps no other sportsman can boast.

I was sitting at the foot of a tree, with my double-barrelled gun between my legs straight before me, the butt-end resting on the ground, and my finger on the trigger. In the other hand I held a leaf, on the edge of which I was whistling in the manner of fowlers when they wish to draw round them small birds. A species of red-breast came and pitched boldly on my hat, thence hopped to the mouth of my fusée, and, setting one foot on each barrel, remained

mained motionless, listening to the music of my leaf, which was altogether new to him.

In desert countries, an animal that has never beheld a human being sees one for the first time without alarm, particularly if the individual it perceives be in a state of rest and do not move.

Whatever might have been the motive of the bird's familiarity, its boldness so surprised me, that, mechanically and without reflection, I pulled the trigger, and the gun went off. I supposed the bird would have been torn in a thousand pieces : but, to my great astonishment, I saw it carried up thirty feet above my head, in an almost perpendicular direction, and fall a few paces from me.

I ran to pick it up. The ends of its quill feathers were a little scorched, and it appeared panting and extremely frightened ; but by degrees it recovered, and, after I had satisfied myself that it had received no wound, I gave it its liberty, and it flew away without appearing to be in the least injured. It is probable that the column of air which filled the barrel, being driven out by the explosion, first struck the bird, which, by a single motion of its wings,



wings, was thrown out of the line of direction of the shot, which passed in a body without touching it, while the fire, occupying a larger space, scorched the ends of its wings and tail.

The oxen which I had hired of the horde becoming useless to me, as my effects were considerably diminished, and I was but a day's journey from my camp, I returned them to their owners, inviting them to come in a few days, when their rejoicings were ended, to ask and receive the reward of their services.

These services were certainly small, as has been seen above ; and, so far from congratulating myself on having such travelling companions, I had wished a thousand times to be rid of them. But periods arrive when every thing is forgotten. These men, whose cowardice and indolence had irritated me so much, appeared no longer the same when they were no longer necessary to me. I saw them with other eyes, and framed excuses at my own expence for their conduct.

How, after all, could I expect, that they should enter into my passion for a science of which they had not the slightest notion? Tranquil both by constitution and by habit, un-  
enslaved

enslaved to fantastic desires, they could not participate in my follies. How often, while I refused to copy their wisdom, have I recollected with regret the moments which, dupe to the specious promises of men and their perfidious lies, I have painfully wasted in endeavouring to serve them ! How often have I resolved never again to exchange my repose, and its unambitious pleasures, for their artificial and insipid praises, for the smoke of that incense, which, so to say, you at last contrive that they shall blow in your face !

After having bestowed some presents on the women and children of the horde, I returned to the river with my party, and we continued to proceed along its course. Though this journey was through places which every one of us had traversed a hundred times, no one recollected them, so brilliant an appearance had the change of the season and the re-ascent of the sap given to what at our departure wore the most sterile aspect.

It is not improbable that we should have passed the camp without knowing it, particularly as it was situated behind the trees on the other bank, so as to be concealed from our view ; but

at

at length, when arrived opposite to it, we discovered where we were by the tomb of the Kaminouqua whom the lion had devoured.

On seeing the termination of so varied an excursion, my people could not contain their joy. They shouted aloud to inform their comrades of their arrival, and at the same time I ordered a discharge of all our musketry. This double signal was heard, and answered by similar howlings. In a moment I saw the whole party of the Hottentots of the camp run to the river, leap into the water, and swim across, to express their joy at my return, and embrace their friends. The uproar was precisely similar to that which I had witnessed the day before.

Swanepoel alone remained on the bank. Too old and too heavy to swim, he stretched out his arms toward us, and called to some of my people to convey him over on the raft. Amid the general joy and surprise no one had thought of him. At length, however, they complied with his request; and the old man, throwing himself into my arms with tears in his eyes, informed me of all the uneasiness he had undergone in my absence.

These four months had been an age to him ; and, though I had told him to wait for me five or six, he had been in doubt whether he ought not to return to the Namero ; particularly as the savages who conducted to the camp the oxen I bought on the road had told him, that, with the friendly manners I had the art of employing, I might proceed so far into the country that, perhaps, he would never hear of me again.

We were much altered, he said, and fallen away ; which, considering the excessive fatigues we had undergone, by no means surprised me. Scorched all day by a fervid sun, obliged continually to march over rocks or sands, sleeping at night on a simple mat, and having usually nothing but brackish water to drink, I certainly did not lead the life of a *satrap*, whatever may be said ; at the same time I do not regret the hardships I experienced. Indeed, notwithstanding my thinness, I never enjoyed better health.

I crossed the river on the raft, and found myself at last in the midst of my real and proper camp. This moment was delightful to me. I seemed returned to take possession of  
my



my estate after a long banishment. The dogs I had left behind knew me. They jumped about me with eagerness, and bestowed on me a thousand caresses.

On such occasions the merest trifles afford pleasure. During my absence, Swanepoel had suffered the hen to sit upon her eggs, and she had now sixteen chickens of a tolerable size. The dogs I brought with me, not being used to these birds, sprung on them, and killed three at the first onset. The hen, and, which was surprising, the cock also, engaged in defence of the brood, which gave us time to come to their assistance. In our poultry yards we never see cocks in such cases defend their hens, and still less do they concern themselves about the chickens: was it then that mine, having but one female, was naturally more attached to her, and, for the same reason, never having seen any other cock caress his companion, loved her the more, and was more fond of her young? Be that as it may, we observe all wild birds in general, and which have but one female, obstinately defend her, and take the greatest care of their young; while in the domestic state, in which we leave a num-

ber of hens to associate in common with several cocks, the same attachment to the female is not displayed, and still less to the young she may bring forth. Whether the cock in the wild state have several hens, is a circumstance with which we are unacquainted. Sonnerat, to whom natural history is greatly indebted, brought from India a wild cock and hen, which he supposes to be of the original species, whence our domestic ones sprung; but he gives us no information respecting the manners of these birds. In Africa I found neither the species nor genus of our domestic fowls, at least in a state of nature; though I have seen, in several collections in Europe, wild cocks and hens altogether different from those brought over by Sonnerat, and forming distinct species. I shall give figures of them in my ornithology.

One of my first cares was to go and examine the skin of my giraffe. It had cost me too much trouble to allow me to be indifferent about its preservation. Having been six months exposed on a scaffold, I had reason to fear its being damaged. I approached it trembling; but joy soon succeeded to my anxiety,

anxiety, when I saw it completely dried, and in a state of perfect preservation.

It would have been, perhaps, more in the order of things to have visited my cattle before the giraffe, since they, in reality, were of the most consequence to me; yet they had only the second place in my care. They were feeding in the environs, where the pasturage was fine. Some goats had kidded; but all my old oxen, one after another, had died, five excepted, which were still in a weak and exhausted state, though labouring under no disease. Notwithstanding all the pains Swanepoel had taken to purchase others, he had been able to procure no more than seventeen oxen and three bulls, which fortunately were in good condition.

During these different examinations, I had perceived among the people in my service some thirty new faces. I saw also at a little distance from the camp a certain number of strange huts. On demanding an explanation of this, I was told, that part of the strangers were savages from the neighbouring hordes sent to procure tobacco. The huts had been erected by other savages, who had come to settle under the protection of Swanepoel, to

be secure from the attacks of the Boshmen, and had formed a little kraal near the camp.

And thus it is that in the infancy of nations towns are formed. A few feeble individuals seek an asylum near the strong. By degrees the society increases ; trade draws strangers to it ; and, as it augments in number, wealth, and strength, it insensibly becomes a people, and adopts a form of government. Into this snare their happiness frequently falls a sacrifice.

The news of my arrival having reached the horde of Bernfry, he forgot the complaints I had against him, and came to pay me a visit. Meeting, however, with a very unwelcome reception both from Swanepoel and me, he listened to us for a while without a word of reply, and then turned his back upon us ; which pleased me, as I hoped, by this unsuccessful attempt, I should be delivered in future from his knavish tricks.

In the different excursions that Swanepoel and Klaas Baster had made to procure oxen, they had killed a large monkey, of a peculiar species, the skin of which they had perfectly preserved, following the method which they had seen me employ. This animal, two feet  
and







THE BLACK APE.



and half high, is covered with dark-brown hair as stiff as that of a hog. Its eyes, situated very high, and level with the surface, give its face a totally different appearance from that of other monkeys. Swanepoel informed me, that he had killed this among a very considerable number of the same species, some of which appeared to him much larger.

My people had been hitherto employed, since my arrival, in unloading the oxen of the caravan, and transporting my baggage across the river on the raft. The most important business remained still to be performed, that of conducting to the camp the oxen themselves. They had hoped to make them pass the river by swimming; but as the oxen had never seen a river so broad, they were terrified at the passage, and all refused to attempt it. To no purpose did they send some of my herd into the water before them, to encourage them by their example, and employ every possible means, even to blows; they still resisted. At length, as night drew on, they resolved to try what appeared the last resource.

A little higher up the river was a holme, which divided it into two branches; and it

might be presumed, that the animals, observing a smaller space of water, would be less afraid, and venture to swim across. At least so we flattered ourselves; and, accordingly, I ordered them to be driven to the place, with a sufficient number of men to guard them during the night, and orders to attempt the passage at sunrise.

Having made this arrangement, I thought every necessary precaution taken, and accordingly retired to rest, in my waggon, with a mind devoid of anxiety. I was fast asleep there in the utmost tranquillity, when Klaas came hastily to waken me, and desire me to rise without delay.

My first thought was, that he was eager to inform me of the passage of my cattle; and I asked whether it had been attended with much difficulty. "That," said he, "is not the business; all is lost. The keepers fell asleep in the night, and let out their fires. The Boshmen, who were on the watch, took advantage of their sleep to drive off the whole herd. By chance one of the sleepers awoke, and, perceiving the robbery, called to arms. They all ran after the marauders,  
" but



“ but these were so numerous, and their rear-  
“ guard, which covered the march of the rest,  
“ let fly at them so many arrows, that our  
“ people, after a few discharges of their mus-  
“ kets, returned, bringing back only three of  
“ the oxen that lagged behind, and had been  
“ very severely handled. We have but one  
“ resource left, which is to pursue the robbers  
“ with a strong party : but then we must set  
“ off without delay, and not lose a moment.”

Circumstanced as I was, this accident was extremely vexatious to me ; not merely from the great loss it occasioned, but because, by taking from me the cattle intended to recruit my teams, it deprived me of the means of returning to the Cape.

The news had scarcely reached my camp, when the suspicions of my people fell upon the Houzouanas, against whom they were still prejudiced. According to them, these plunderers alone were to be charged with it, who, after insidious instances of service, had, in their opinion, followed our track, and availed themselves of the moment of my absence to carry off what I was not at hand to defend.

I could not credit these accusations ; and the  
event

event proved them to be unfounded. But I had no inclination to waste my time in confuting them. It was of little consequence to me to know who had committed the theft; my business was to recover the booty, and this was to be done only by following the advice of Klaas.

I issued my orders in consequence. Uncertain of the time the expedition might require, though assured it could not succeed without great celerity, I loaded an ox with my marquee, my cloak, some ammunition, the krosses of the men who were to attend me, and two sheep, which we killed and skinned.

My detachment consisted of the faithful Klaas, four of my bravest hunters, of whom Baster was one, and eight Hottentots armed with bows and arrows. Klaas was armed at all points like myself, and like me also was on horseback. I took with me, besides, a part of my pack, not omitting my great dog Yager.

We soon crossed the river and reached the keepers. They appeared so confounded at seeing me, that, if I had had time to reprimand them,

them for their negligence, the shame and sorrow they felt would not have left me the heart to do it. Besides, there were Kaminouquas among them, who, having lent me their oxen on hire for the journey, had lost them by the robbery, as I had mine.

These men requested permission to attend me, that their own concerns might not be neglected. To this I consented; and I ordered the rest to repair to the camp, with the three oxen they had recovered, in the best manner they could.

We could not mistake our road, as it was traced on the sand by the footsteps of our animals, which we followed for six full hours, going up the banks of the river. At length they appeared to strike off from the river at an angle, in order to penetrate into the country.

Here the approach of night determined me to stop. I ordered fires to be lighted, and some necessary precautions taken to prevent surprise, and in the mean time I proceeded with Klaas to reconnoitre the track, and make myself certain of its direction.

After about half an hour's ride, we perceived

ceived that the herd had been divided, one part turning off due east, the other continuing to advance to the north. The latter being the more considerable, we resolved to make that our pursuit, and, the sooner to overtake it, to resume our journey before day. This plan being fixed, we returned to the halting-place; and, after a very peaceable night, set off, in fact, two hours before sunrise.

Though we could not see the track because of the darkness, I flattered myself, that, by travelling northerly, I should not miss it; and, if I did miss it, it could not much signify, as we might soon find it again, and without difficulty. We made, however, no mistake; for, when day broke, we found ourselves following precisely its direction; but, after travelling four long leagues, I perceived it visibly to bend to the right, as if to rejoin the division which had turned off to the east. Bafter, who had traversed this district in my absence, told me he knew where he was, and that a very little way off was a horde of Kaminouquas, which he had visited for the purpose of trade.

From what he said of the situation of this horde, I found that it was between  
the



the two tracks. My companions, more distrustful, thought they both terminated there, and that the Kaminouquas were consequently the thieves.

I could not easily suspect a nation, which, in all its dealings with me and all its tradings at the camp, had uniformly shown itself just and true. Besides, by proceeding to the kraal as my people proposed, I should quit the track, and perhaps lose a portion of time that was very valuable. However, as all my company were unanimous for this digression, I at last yielded to the general opinion, and we repaired straight to the horde.

I had not been mistaken in my good opinion of it. The moment I reached it, I perceived by the serenity of the countenances of the savages, and the friendly manner in which they accosted me, that my companions were wrong in their suspicions. Of this they were soon convinced themselves, and were not backward to avow their error.

We here, however, gained intelligence of the stolen herd. One of the savages had seen it pass by the evening before, escorted by a great number of men, who seemed proceeding  
ing

ing towards the river, on the other side of which they probably dwelt. Two persons voluntarily offered to point out their track, and be my guides across the river to the place in question. This offer I accepted; but, alas! I was little aware to what a cruel fate they would be exposed by their generous services.

Meanwhile, as to myself, it was fortunate for me that I visited the horde; for the ox that carried my baggage was so exhausted with fatigue, as to be almost incapable of going any farther. I therefore hired two others to supply his place. I also added two fresh sheep to our provision; and we speedily departed.

We were obliged to travel four leagues east by north before we re-discovered the track. It then appeared again, and led us to the banks of Orange-River, where it terminated. At this place, therefore, the robbers must have crossed the river with their booty. The fact I thought unquestionable; yet my two Kaminouqua guides swam over to be certain of it.

As I had no doubt, from the information I had received, but the Boshmen of whom I was

in quest dwelt on that side, I thought it prudent to leave the stream between them and me, and to spend the night where I was. We had travelled, during the day, thirteen leagues, without any where stopping, except at the kraal; and of course we wanted rest. Our two guides, after they had discovered the track and followed it for the space of two hours returned; but, when arrived at the river, they saw, floating on the water, a drowned ox, which they pushed forward, and drove ashore near where we were encamped. Upon examining, I found it to be one of mine, for it had my mark; and Klaas, besides, instantly knew it.

During the night I was busied on the means of passing the river. I had observed it nowhere so broad and rapid, and it was an artful trick of these robbers to choose, for crossing it, the most difficult and dangerous situation.

What particularly astonished me was, that they had succeeded in driving over the cattle, while my people could not even get them into the water at a place where it was two thirds narrower. This thought increased my rage; and, to confess the truth, I had need of some such motive to animate me against the plunderers,

derers, as I should otherwise have been staggered by the difficulty of the passage, which would have induced me to return and relinquish the pursuit.

Though exasperated, I was not, however, blind to the danger; and, in some degree to diminish it, I proceeded farther up the river, and crossed it where its bed was much less wide. I had no room to fear going out of the way by this proceeding; for, besides that the drowned ox convinced me that the Boshmen were higher up, my guides, who had reconnoitred the track the day before, could not fail of putting me into it.

In fact, we easily found it again, and pursued it anew for the space of five leagues, when my Kaminouquas suddenly stopped as if thunderstruck; for the footsteps, instead of continuing to tend towards the horde they had suspected, turned off at an angle, and were directed a second time to the river.

This new disappointment put us all to a stand. The surprise was general; and we looked at one another for some time without speaking a word. Our guides, forced to acknowledge the innocence of the horde they  
had



had accused, now turned their suspicions to another that resided five leagues from the river, on the side we had quitted; and, in fact, every footstep pointed to the river, not one from it.

So many contradictions seemed created on purpose to discourage me; yet had they no other effect than to provoke and animate me the more. Accordingly we passed the river a third time, and, after stopping to take some refreshment, resumed our pursuit of the track, which at first, for the space of a league, led us north-west, and then approached Orange-River once more by a large circuit, which brought us nearly back to the place where we had crossed it the preceding evening.

Thus, after various turnings and windings, after three days toilsome travelling, we were obliged to pass the river a fourth time. To deceive and mislead me with respect to their course, the plunderers, with artful and deep-laid contrivance, had crossed it themselves three times; and thereby led me, by forced marches and countermarches, to a considerable distance after a horde which lived scarcely more than

eighteen or twenty leagues from my camp, and on the same side of the river.

Certainly, had I known these circumstances, I might have saved myself much pain and labour: but how could I divine them? And who, in my place, would not have been equally deceived? My guides themselves, confounded at so much art, were afraid I should not believe them, but suspect them of favouring the thieves, and assisting them to put their booty in a state of security, by making me lose so much valuable time. To convince me of their good faith, they would in every instance pass the river before me, and satisfy themselves that the footsteps actually re-appeared, before they would advise me to follow them.

This last passage had nearly cost me my life. I attempted it as usual on horseback, while two swimmers conducted the horse by the bridle. About the middle of the river, one of the rings of the bit gave way. Finding himself incommoded by the other, he jerked his head so violently as to make the second swimmer let go his hold; and the horse was accordingly at the mercy of the stream. As I had no means of  
command-

commanding him, I stooped forward over his neck, and endeavoured to guide him, by patting him with my hand. But to swim as I wished him required strength, and of this his journey had totally deprived him; so that he drove with the current for more than a quarter of an hour, without making any effort but what was absolutely necessary to keep him above water.

Luckily for me, the current, by which we were in danger of drowning, drove him to the bank, but so exhausted with fatigue that he could not stand. My people, who ran to my assistance, endeavoured in vain to set him upon his feet: all their efforts were to no purpose; he was perfectly unable to rise, and absolutely lay on the place the remainder of the day and all the night.

To allow him the more time to recover, I did not set off till late in the morning. We again followed the track of our cattle, which led us eastward for four leagues, when we fell into a path that conducted to the horde. In this path terminated the footsteps of our oxen, all of which had assembled together in this place; so that we had no doubt but the people of this horde were the robbers.

My two Kaminouqua guides requested me to excuse their accompanying me any farther. They were afraid, if they proceeded with us, they might be known, and that, suspected of having conducted me to the horde, a war between the two nations would be the consequence. Their fear was well founded, and their caution sufficiently reasonable. Seeing, therefore, nothing but what was just in their request, unfortunately for them I complied with it. It was agreed that they should continue where we then were, and there await our return. However, as it would not have been prudent to advance in broad day and expose ourselves too openly, I resolved to wait till night. Dark as it might prove, the path was too much trodden for us to be in any danger of losing our way.

We set off at two in the morning with the profoundest silence, and soon perceived the light of several fires, which my people supposed to be about three-quarters of a league distant. On advancing farther, we heard songs, shouts of joy, and immoderate laughter. The robbers were diverting themselves and feasting at my expence.

Their



Their noisiness, however, had one good effect. My dogs, on approaching them, began to bark so loudly, that we thought proper to muzzle them ; and, but for the uproar that drowned their voices, they would infallibly have betrayed us. And now behold me for the first time in my life in a state of war with a savage horde, and determined to carry it on with art, if I found myself opposed by a superior force !

As it was no favourable moment for the attack, I deferred it till break of day ; and, that it might be conducted in the most advantageous manner, I intrenched both myself and my troop behind a thick patch of brushwood, which afforded us a secure rampart against the offensive weapons of our enemies, and rendered ours still more formidable.

The bush was large enough to contain and shelter all my fusileers, and each of us, by separating a few branches, made a sort of loop-hole, through which he could present the mouth of his piece and fire.

In this situation, we waited patiently and in silence for the moment of attack. The knaves themselves seemed to favour us by their con-

duct. Their obstreperous joy subsided by degrees ; and at length, giving way to fatigue, they withdrew into their huts to sleep, and the noise ceased altogether.

Day appeared, to the satisfaction of my impatience, which I could scarce restrain. But I then perceived that we had badly calculated our distance. Our post was so far from the kraal, that our shot would hardly reach it. We were obliged, therefore, to quit the bush, and approach nearer the huts : but we left our two oxen and my two horses sheltered by it, with a man to take care of them, that they might be ready for my use if we experienced a check.

Certain that all the people of the kraal were fast asleep, we advanced openly, and took post in front of it within gun-shot. The kraal was of considerable size, appearing to contain about thirty or forty huts. It was built on the side of a hill, about half way up its acclivity, and behind it a range of lofty mountains arose like an amphitheatre.

All our guns were loaded, which I thought a necessary precaution : yet it was not my intention to commence hostilities by the effusion  
of

of blood. I was desirous of alarming the robbers only, and putting them to flight, by the terror of a sudden and unexpected attack. In consequence, I enjoined my people to fire into the air, and positively forbad them to aim at a single man, unless we were obliged to do so, and I should give express orders to that purpose.

I began the attack by firing my large carbine, the report of which, re-echoed by the neighbouring mountains, produced a thundering noise. We expected that the whole horde would run away affrighted at the sound; and my people prepared to heighten the general terror by a discharge of their musketry. To our great astonishment, however, not a single person appeared. I ordered several other discharges of our guns, but in vain; every thing still continued quiet, and I was at a loss what to augur from the circumstance.

This security was but apparent. While every thing without indicated sleep and tranquillity, within all was confusion and affright. But by an infernal stratagem, in which my robbers no doubt had long been practised, no one would shew himself till all were in a state

of defence. Probably they had a signal to inform each other on such occasions when they were ready.

When armed, all, suddenly and at the same instant, issued from their huts, advanced towards us with fearful yells, and discharged a flight of arrows, which fell short, as we were out of their reach, and which we returned by a discharge of our pieces, still firing over their huts.

The savages, finding that no one was wounded, supposed that my shot could not injure them. They accordingly all joined, and advanced against us with fury. I waited their approach without moving. My people, in the mean time, cried out to them to restore my oxen. Whether they heard us amid the general noise, I am ignorant; but, being arrived within bow-shot, they sent us another flight of arrows, which now fell every where around us.

Thinking that it was no longer time to dally and content myself with empty noise, I ordered my men to fire at their antagonists; and, our discharges succeeding alternately, we soon saw the troop dispersing like ants, each running his own way, with yells which  
were



were not, like the former, signals of battle and the expression of intrepidity, but the cries of despair.

Soon, however, they rallied; and I saw them even gain the summit of the hill, collect my cattle that were scattered about upon it, and disappear with them. Their women and children had already repaired thither during the engagement, so that the shadow of an enemy was no longer to be seen.

The most vexatious circumstance that could happen to me at such a juncture was this retreat, which a second time deprived me of my cattle. Where would have been the use of all the labour and fatigue that for some days I had undergone, if, without resource, they were taken from me anew? Not a moment was to be lost. Should the troop reach the defiles of the mountains with them, their recovery would be impossible, and they would be gone for ever.

I sent, therefore, for my two horses, which were behind the bush, and dispatching three of my marksmen to intercept the herd and its conductors on one side, I galloped away with Klaas to cut off their retreat on the other.

I soon

I soon perceived the savages descending the back of the hill, and endeavouring to reach a plain, in which was a wood. On seeing us, they redoubled their speed, and disappeared a second time : but those who drove the cattle, unable to make them proceed as fast as they wished, on account of the descent, and finding themselves in danger of being surrounded, quitted the herd, and ran to join their comrades.

Their flight was accelerated by the arrival of my three marksmen, who came near enough to fire at and kill one of them. In the mean time I arrived with Klaas by the other route of the circle, and thus we got possession of the cattle.

It was nevertheless possible, that the fugitives, recovering from their first surprise, might be ashamed of having fled before a few men, whom they twenty times out-numbered, and return to attack us in force. Besides, if they wanted courage, they were not unskilled in wiles and stratagems; and they might thereby harass our retreat, and gradually deprive us of the fruit of our victory. Without a moment's delay, therefore, I posted two men on the hill to watch their movements, and observe whether

ther they came out of the wood, while I proceeded to the kraal to rejoin the rest of my troop, having the herd driven before me.

Either by the extreme fatigue of the forced march they had been compelled to make, or by wounds from the assagays with which they had been driven on, almost all the cattle were lamed. However, it was a happiness to us to recover them in any condition. The Kaminouquas knew theirs, which were all complete in point of number, as also were mine, the ox excepted which was drowned in the river, and my war-ox. This fine animal had been killed for the feast, and we found his head on the ground near the kraal.

The cattle of the horde were in their enclosure, so that it was in my power to have avenged myself according to the law of retaliation by taking them all away; to which the people in their anger advised me. Such conduct, in their opinion, was perfectly just; and the planters at the Cape never fail so to act on similar occasions. But this was not conformable to my principles. As an indemnification for my loss, I contented myself with a young cow, which had just calved, and two fat sheep—less as an equivalent for what they had

had stolen, than to give them a striking proof of my moderation and scrupulous equity.

Having inflicted this punishment, I called in my sentinels, and prepared to depart. Being obliged to pass through the long narrow path by which we came, I had many precautions to take to avoid an ambuscade and reprisals; and these were the more necessary, because the oxen could travel but slowly on account of their wounds, and were forced to proceed in a line one after another. I sent Klaas with two fusileers at the head of the detachment, while I formed myself with the rest of the troop the rear guard; and in this order we reached the plain.

I expected to find the two Kaminouqua guides in the place where we had left them the day before; but when we drew near, I heard a lamentable yelling at the head of my troop, which chilled me with horror. I immediately hastened thither; and my eyes were presented with so frightful a spectacle, that the hideous idea of it makes me still shudder as I write. The two unfortunate savages, who had so generously offered themselves as my guides, were lying on the ground, nearly dead, and weltering in their blood.



My first thought was, that they had been discovered by some of the horde, and sacrificed to their suspicion ; but, on approaching nearer, I was quickly undeceived. The lower jaw of one was bruised; broken, and almost all torn away. The fragments that still remained, and his tongue which was exposed to view, hung bleeding on his neck and breast. He was absolutely dying, and afforded no other sign of life than the beating of his pulse. But the prodigious swelling of his head, the dreadful alteration of his face, and the starting of the eyes from their orbits, had so disfigured him, that he no longer retained a human countenance, and exhibited a sight that while it rended my heart was disgusting to behold.

His comrade had many bites or lacerations on the body, and one arm broken, or rather ground to pieces, in two places. His condition, however, was by no means so bad as the other, and he could even speak.

We interrogated him respecting the cause of their disaster, and he informed us, that, after we had left him, they had extinguished their fire, that they might not be discovered by the Boshmen ; and having fallen asleep at  
a little

a little distance from each other, he was presently awaked by the cries of his companion. Instantly running to his assistance, he found him struggling in the paws of a lion, which he struck in the flank with his assagay. The animal, finding himself wounded, then turned upon him, and reduced him before he fled to the condition in which we saw him.

This melancholy narrative grieved and terrified me; and my distress was rendered more acute by the reflection, that I was myself the innocent cause of their death by having accepted their services. How much did I then lament, that I had no other assistance to offer to these poor expiring wretches, than that of ending their sufferings by dispatching them on the spot!

To this barbarous action, however, I felt, with regard to one of them, extreme repugnance. I therefore tore my shirt, and made bandages of it, with which, in the best manner I could, I bound up the wounds of the dying Kaminouqua. I did the same also to the arm of his comrade. But, as it would have been dangerous for us to remain too long in a place so near the horde, I thought it

prudent to depart as quickly as possible. I directed the wounded men to be placed on my two horses, and marched myself on foot, continuing to command the rear guard. We had fortunately no occasion again to cross the river, my camp being on this side, as I have already observed; accordingly I proceeded straight towards it.

After five hours travelling, having found an open plain, where I had no reason to fear being attacked by surprise, I halted and resolved to pass the night there, out of pity for the two wounded men. The motion of the journey had rendered them worse. One of them already experienced that fatal rattling in the throat which is the sign of approaching death, and which left me no hope of his recovery. Him I directed to be laid on the ground, and conceived that the best thing I could do was there to suffer him quietly to die.

The shaking of the horse, renewing the pains of his comrade, drew from him the most agonizing cries on the road, which pierced my very soul; and he conjured me a hundred times to put an end to his torments by shoot-  
ing

ing him through the head. I took off the bandage from his arm, and saw, by the swelling and inflammation it had produced, that his sufferings must have been extreme. My savages went in quest of some herbs, which they bruised and applied by way of poultice: while I, as the best means I could devise, directed splints to be prepared to steady his arm; but they employed a much more ingenious contrivance, the simplicity of which surprised me.

They chose a young tree nearly of the size of the fractured limb, and, making a longitudinal incision in the bark, separated a piece of a certain length from its whole circumference; then opening this kind of sheath, they placed the arm in it, and confined it with a thong.

I admired the novelty and readiness of the invention; for I was ignorant that it had been known in Europe for several years, and that our surgeons had lately employed the bark of the oak for the same purpose, and with similar success. Thus simple and beneficent nature is always the last to whom we have recourse; though it requires ages of learning and immense study to learn to forget her for a moment.

At the approach of night I ordered large  
fires



fires to be kindled, which, being disposed in a circle of more than four hundred paces in diameter, formed a ring around us upwards of twelve hundred paces in extent. Its vivid light, exposing an extensive field to our view, guarded us from surprise ; and at the same time it would keep our enemies at such a distance, if they came to attack us, that we should be out of reach of their arrows, or at most within random shot only, as they could not take the necessary aim to do us effectual injury. My marquee was pitched in the centre of this large circle, and had another fire near it.

About ten at night, the savage whom I had given over as irrecoverable expired ; and his death, from the gloomy reflections to which it gave rise, diffused a melancholy sorrow among my people. I retired to my tent to indulge my feelings : but my dog, who lay by my side, presently displayed extraordinary uneasiness, at which I was alarmed. Listening I heard the roar of a lion. No doubt it was the same by which the Kaminouquas had been attacked the night before, and that had followed our steps. A few discharges of our guns, however, drove him away, and we heard him no more.

Some minutes after, I was alarmed by the tumultuous movements of our cattle: they jostled one another in a fearful manner, were in violent agitation, and bellowed terribly. At first we thought it was the lion returning, and a few guns were fired again to drive him away: but their fright, which still continued, indicated enemies of another kind. At the same time I heard on the outside of my marquee a noise like something continually falling upon and striking it.

Though my dog was still restless, I gave little heed to his warning, as I had frequently heard similar blows occasioned by large beetles flying headlong against my tent. I lay still, therefore, on my mat; but presently feeling the cloak that covered me to be struck by something, I stretched out my hand, and, to my surprise, picked up an arrow.

It was clear that we were attacked, and that the Boshmen, availing themselves of the night, had pursued and were actually firing upon us. I called to arms, and my troop was instantly in a state of defence. As the fire near my tent diffused too much light around us, and thereby exposed us too visibly to their arrows, I ordered

dered it to be extinguished. By this proceeding we were ourselves in a degree of darkness, while the fires that surrounded us would render our enemies perfectly visible if they approached. No one, however, appeared; yet they continued from time to time to let fly their arrows at my tent.

My people would fain have taken it down: but this I would not permit, for I was glad that its whiteness rendered it perceptible, and that it served as a mark to the shooters. We had only to retire from it, and remain at a little distance, to have nothing to fear from them: besides, the more they shot, the sooner it was to be presumed their quivers would be emptied, and consequently the sooner would they be induced to retreat.

My only fear was, that, knowing us to be few in number, and themselves a multitude in comparison, they would direct their attack accordingly. Certainly, if they had surrounded us by forming a circle, and had then fallen all at once upon our little band, we must have been massacred without resource. But this was beyond their skill in tactics. So far from forming such a plan, all their arrows came from the

same side, which shewed they were united in a body there, and did not mean to separate.

This imprudence gave us a great advantage over them, by pointing at the spot at which we might direct our guns. Such of my Hottentots as had arrows requested that they might make use of them also; but I would not permit it; for their uncertain aim would have been useless at the time, and would besides, while it stripped us of our weapons, have furnished a supply to the enemy.

The safest way in our situation was to wait patiently, and suffer them to exhaust their stock of arrows. Most of them fell upwards of twenty paces from us, and those that reached us were shot at random, and had spent their force; so that being myself wrapped in my cloak, and my people in their kroffes, we had nothing to fear from them.

What I foresaw took place. Our assailants exhausted their ammunition; a few arrows only were now shot towards us at considerable intervals; and the approach of day soon made them give over the attack altogether, and think of nothing but retreating.

It is certain that, thus disarmed and defenceless,



less, they had exposed themselves to great risk ; and, if I had thought proper to pursue them, I might have massacred a great number. This my people eagerly advised. But of what advantage to me would a few murders have been ? I had regained possession of my herd, and perhaps too much blood had already been shed. If the return of dawn, therefore, gave me pleasure, it was that it freed me from an attack which had occasioned some uneasiness, and permitted me to resume my journey.

My Hottentot bowmen employed themselves in collecting the arrows. There was a considerable number, and they were all poisoned. Three only had penetrated into my tent ; seventeen had pierced the canvass, and still remained there ; all the rest were scattered around. One of my oxen, however, had received two wounds ; and as the wounds, though slight, must have proved mortal in consequence of the poison, I ordered him to be killed and cut up immediately for our eating.

Before we set off, I was desirous that we should bury the corpse of our unfortunate Kaminouqua, or at least cover it with sand and

stones; and I proposed it to his countrymen: but they asked my permission to take it with them. They were afraid that the robbers, when they returned to search for their arrows, would discover the body, and lay upon it some fatal spell. Such, said they, is the custom of the Boshmen; and in this way do those barbarians frequently cause a whole family, and sometimes even a whole nation, to perish.

These remarks betrayed gross ignorance and superstition. But, as I had no hopes of enlightening them, I consented to their request. The body of the dead Kaminouqua was accordingly wrapped up in his kross, and placed upon the back of an ox; and we departed.

I continued to pursue nearly the same course, keeping at some distance, however, from the trees on the side of the river, that we might neither be surrounded nor surprised. After four hours march, I thought proper to halt to take some refreshment. We had now been fasting four-and-twenty hours, without having been able to sleep, or swallow so much as a morsel of food.

While we were taking our repast, three savages of the Gheysliqua nation passed us; a  
nation

nation which I had been assured was the only one among the Hottentots that practised semi-castration. Their horde was six leagues distant on our left, to the south-east; and they were going to visit some hordes of the greater Nimiquas. But when they heard of our adventure with the Boshmén, they imagined these freebooters would still remain in the field for several days to annoy me on my march, and that it would not be prudent for them to continue their journey. Accordingly they resolved to return.

As I had been attacked the preceding night, and, having still two nights to pass before I could reach my camp, had reason to fear I should be attacked again, I thought I should act wisely by altering my course, and accompanying the Gheysiquas to their horde. By this oblique march, I might deceive the Boshmén, and throw them off their scent; and if, notwithstanding the darkness of the night, they discovered my stratagem and perceived my steps, I had reason to imagine they would cease to follow, or at least not venture to approach me, when supported by a numerous

horde. This conjecture seemed plausible to my people: they pressed me to adopt the plan, and I did so.

The dead body, however, gave me some uneasiness. I was afraid it might be the object of some fresh superstition to the people of the horde, and that they would give us but an unwelcome reception, if they did not absolutely drive us from their district.

To prevent this inconvenience, I proposed to the Kaminouquas to inter the body, and they consented. Besides the kross in which it was wrapped, another was put over its face; it was then covered with stones; and they fulfilled, as far as circumstances allowed, all the duties prescribed by the customs of their nation.

It was sunset when we reached the horde; and I was received with the same friendship as I had experienced every where else. But no sooner was our adventure known than they were seized with alarm. They had no doubt but the Boshmen would come and attack us again during the night. In consequence they not only removed their cattle, but requested  
me



me to keep mine separate from them, and at a distance from the kraal.

These precautions arose from the bad opinion entertained of the Boshmen; and indeed the tales they related of them rendered their suspicions excusable. According to these Gheysfiquas, the Boshmen horde was nothing but the retreat of assassins, the asylum of thieves, composed of deserters from twenty different nations; and so much the more dangerous, because, being formidable from their number, they attacked, openly and without distinction, every little tribe from which they could expect any booty.

These societies of Boshmen in no wise resemble those I had seen in the east of Africa. The latter, composed of thieves and runaways who distrust one another, were few in number, and consisted of little separate bands, from whom, of course, nothing more than some bold stroke or nocturnal surprise was to be feared. The others, on the contrary, those with whom I had at present to deal, compose a formidable nation; and, to say the truth, I was astonished that a society of men without

restraint, without discipline, and without friends, were able to subsist. Yet what still more surprised me was, that they should subsist with impunity, and possess a peaceable abode in the midst of twenty different hordes, which incessantly suffered from their robberies, and had not the courage to extirpate them.

With respect to the robbery which regarded myself, I here learned some particulars of the manner in which it had been accomplished, with which I was before unacquainted. Bernfry and Moodel, it seems, had given the advice and concerted the plan. These two villains, united together and worthy of being friends, were in alliance with the Boshmen. On the watch for expeditions and enterprises which the Boshmen may undertake, they give them information, point out the means of succeeding, direct the execution, and share the profit.

Moodel in particular, more closely connected with the horde than Bernfry, was at once their spy and protector. All his cattle were kept at their kraal; all I saw there had his mark, and belonged to him; and the Gheysiquas expressed their sorrow that I did not, as  
a punish-

a punishment for the theft committed on me, take them away.

I had taken every precaution for the defence of mine, should we be attacked again in the night ; but whether the Boshmen lost our track in the dark, or whether they feared the assistance that might be given me by the horde, they did not appear.

To escape them entirely and reach my camp, I had now, as nearly as I could estimate, fifteen or sixteen leagues to travel ; and, as so long a journey was not to be accomplished in one day, I could have wished to proceed as far as possible by a forced march, and then halt for the night. But the condition of my oxen prevented my executing this plan. As the thieves had compelled them to travel without resting, and had not even once allowed them time to feed, they were so extremely fatigued and reduced, that I despaired of being able to drive them a step farther. I saw them stretched on the ground as if they were never more to rise. They were in the midst of excellent grass ; yet, notwithstanding this circumstance, and hungry as they were, their weariness was so

so great as to take from them all desire of eating.

It was fortunate for me, under such circumstances, that I had arrived at a place where I had nothing to fear from the Boshmen. This security, added to the excellence of the pasture, determined me to remain for a while where I was. Besides, our halt, while it allowed the cattle time to recover, would also afford rest to our wounded Kaminouqua, who had in reality equal need of it.

His arm had swelled to such a degree, that it was necessary to place it in a larger piece of bark. All the part about the elbow had suppurated, and splinters were working out of it, which his surgeons extracted without pity, though the operation drew from him the most lamentable cries. They continued to apply cataplasms to his wound, composed of chewed leaves and mutton suet. He had the most sanguine hopes from this remedy ; and I also, ignorant as I was, had some confidence in it, because his wounds, except the swelling, looked well, and he felt easy every time they were cooled by the application of a fresh dressing.

To



To judge of the Gheyffiquas by their features and the clapping of their language, they are of the Hottentot nation. They have marks of resemblance to the Gonaquas; and, from a comparison of these analogies, I believe them to have sprung from the Nimiquas and the Caffres, as the Gonaquas are descended from the Caffres and the Hottentots.

The district inhabited by the Gheyffiqua nation borders on Caffraria, which confirms my conjecture. The people of the horde themselves showed me a chain of mountains to the east, which extending to a distance was lost in the north, and which, inhabited by their principal tribes, separated them from the Caffres, or at least from the Briquas and Bremas, whom they consider as tribes of Caffres.

The Gheyffiqua language appeared to me to be nearly the same as that of the Greater Nimiquas; yet these two people seemed to bear less resemblance to each other than any of the African nations.

With respect to such characteristics as are not original and derived from nature, as the form of their dress, weapons, instruments of music, fondness for hunting and dancing, and the

the like, the Gheyffiquas do not differ from the surrounding nations; except in having adopted a particular colour for their ornaments. All the ornaments of the Gheyffiquas are white, and composed of the bones of a sheep's leg or foot, to which they give a dazzling whiteness by processes peculiar to themselves. Thus, as they fabricate their own necklaces and other articles of luxury, and have no occasion to purchase the materials, they have no dependence on the colonies with respect to trade, except for a few necessary articles, which they want in common with other savages. Accordingly this nation is less known and less visited than any other.

The women are well made, lively, and always ready to laugh or dance: yet, with all the gaiety of their disposition, they have the reservedness of manners to which polished nations give the names of modesty and decorum, and which, in so warm a climate and with such ardent constitutions, appears to be a virtue of no easy attainment.

I am ignorant to what physical or moral cause they are indebted for their continence; and I shall only observe how strange it is, that

in the same climate, and among people differing so little from each other, we should find here women so chaste, and there others so much the reverse !

No where did I meet with a nation so truly generous. I had absolutely nothing to give in exchange ; yet during the two days I spent with them, I had bowls of milk brought me as presents, night and morning, from every hut. The chief even obliged me to accept a lamb ; and, though my people had still some of the ox that had been killed the day before, he would give them also several sheep to regale themselves with.

I have observed above, that semi-castration is practised exclusively among the Gheyssiquas ; and it prevails in all their hordes without exception, as I was assured by those in whom I convinced myself of the fact by my own eyes, which I did without difficulty ; for no sooner was the subject of my curiosity known, than every one complaisantly offered to satisfy me, so that if I had pleased I might have inspected the whole horde.

Many travellers have written upon the subject of this whimsical operation ; but they do not

agree either as to its origin, the motives that led to its invention, or the nations that practise it. Kolben, who never agrees with any other author, and often not very well with himself, represents it as a religious ceremony, a general and sacred law with all the Hottentots indiscriminately.

According to him, a priest is charged with the performance. “No one is remembered ever to have violated it; and woe to him who should endeavour to shun the ceremony, as he would thereby certainly forfeit his life!” The prejudices that prevail with respect to this duty are even such,” he adds, “that a woman would not submit to the embraces of a man who had not undergone the operation. The girls, when they marry, are very rigorous in exacting proof of it; and as their natural modesty does not allow them to satisfy themselves, this office is left to the matrons of the family.”

Every word of what I have just recited from Kolben is fabulous. Yet if we were to believe him, he has often been present at the operation; which, he tells us, commonly consists in the extraction of the left testicle; and he even describes



describes minutely all the circumstances. But this is another of his falsehoods ; and at the Cape, where all the world knows he was never once out of the town, this lying assertion is a matter of public notoriety.

With regard to the motives that have induced the savages to adopt the practice in question, I have already said, that travellers are not agreed upon the subject. Some attribute it to the desire of rendering themselves more fleet in running ; others to an intention of preventing the too abundant propagation of the species. Kolben seems to incline to the latter opinion : yet, far from adducing arguments to support it, he contradicts it himself, by advancing, that twins are not the less common on account of the operation.

These contradictions formed in the head of this author a confusion and perplexity, which he knew not how to unravel ; and thence he concludes, that “ it is by no means astonishing  
“ if writers who have preceded him in giving  
“ accounts of the Cape, differ from one another,  
“ since the Hottentots themselves do not agree  
“ in the reasons they assign for so whimsical a  
“ custom.”

Though I have had it in my power to interrogate, respecting its origin, the nations that practise it, I cannot flatter myself with knowing more of it than other travellers. Those of the Gheyssiquas whom I questioned on the subject gave me such an absurd reason, that I almost hesitate to repeat it. According to them, it was a mark of distinction which their ancestors, being at war with the neighbouring nations, invented for the purpose of knowing one another.

On such occasions I am well aware that people nearly naked, and resembling each other in features and complexion, stand in need of distinguishing marks and means of knowing their fellows. It is with this view that most of the nations that furnish slaves to Europeans, as the Loangoes, Pomboes, Cormantins, Aboes, Papas, &c. scar their faces, arms, breasts, and all the forepart of the body from head to foot. The figure and arrangement of these scars are such, that each nation may be distinguished at first sight, and even at a distance. At Surinam I have observed the slaves brought for sale produce a greater or less price, according to the scars by which their country was distinguished.

That external marks thus apparent may  
have

have been invented by uncultivated nations is easy to be conceived : but that the people of one of them, in order to recognize each other, should adopt a mark difficult to distinguish, and which modesty would incline them to conceal, appears to me to be improbable, and not entitled to belief.

Be this as it may, there are two modes of performing the operation ; and as they are not equally painful, one or the other is employed according to the age of the subject and the strength of his constitution. I shall not enter into particulars on this point : the processes are nearly the same as they would be with us, and the result has already been sufficiently explained. I shall only observe, that the father usually takes upon him the operation, which he commonly performs at the birth of the child. Sometimes, however, he defers it till the child is three years old, or even more; and then, as I have just said, a different mode is employed by him.

If I had pleased, I might have been present at the ceremony. A woman of the horde was near the time of her delivery ; but I should have been obliged, perhaps, to have

waited several days, and this delay did not accord with my impatience to reach my camp.

On the other hand I could have wished not to resume my journey, for fear of being again attacked by the Boshmen. I was desirous of informing Swanepoel of my situation, and obtaining from him a reinforcement which would enable me to repel them; but how could I transmit to him my orders? I had already proposed this commission to the people of the horde the first day of my arrival, but in vain, for no one would undertake it; and as to my own people, they spoke of it with so much reluctance and affright, that, after sounding them upon the subject, I thought it prudent not to make the proposal.

Klaas, indeed, was sufficiently intrepid and devoted to my service to embrace it, and he even offered to set out alone. But, in my present situation, the bravery of this man was more necessary to me than ever. He was the soul of my troop; he supported its courage by his example; and, if we should be again attacked, I had too much need of such a second voluntarily to part with him. I gave up,  
there-



therefore, all thoughts of a reinforcement, and found myself obliged to continue my journey as I had begun it.

I ventured, however, to request of the chief a few men to serve me as an escort to my camp; and, to induce them to comply, I announced, that I would reward them for their services when I arrived, and that I should be equally ready to make him also some acknowledgment for his. I expected a refusal; but to my astonishment, several persons, without hesitation, offered to accompany me.

What was more, the chief sent with me one of his daughters, requesting me to deliver to her the presents intended for himself, and not to entrust them to any one else; which I accordingly promised.

We set off two hours before dawn, that we might have a longer day, and advance so much the farther. The people of the horde doubted not but the Boshmen were at hand, to watch our steps, and attack us under favour of the night: and this conjecture was the more probable, inasmuch as having a wide plain to cross we must march in view. But if this were an inconvenience on the one hand, we

had the advantage on the other of being able to see all around us, and to discover our enemies as quickly and as easily as they could discover us.

By the silence observed by my people, and the haste with which they proceeded, I judged that they were not altogether devoid of fear. But, when day appeared, a complete change took place; and they vented their courage in the most laughable bravadoes. They argued with one another on the means of repulsing these Boshmen, of whom they were no longer afraid; and on the stratagems and manœuvres to be employed to exterminate every man of them, if they had the boldness to make their appearance.

Each went beyond his companion in his boasts. It was who could profess most intrepidity in facing a danger from which they saw themselves free. Proud as your train-bands, who may have been engaged in a skirmish with the mob, they recounted the adventures of the night in which we had been attacked, and wished it again to return.

This ebullition of courage continued, however, the whole day. The moment a ditch,  
a hillock,

a hillock, or any little rising, appeared before us, several of them would voluntarily set off to reconnoitre it, and be sure that no ambuscade was formed there; and they would not suffer us to advance till they gave the signal. They were real children, whose very timidity rendered their company the more diverting to me, and whom I might have led to either pole, through a hundred deserts, provided I could have guarantied their lives, which they valued above all things; happy in being ignorant of our wants, which frequently render existence a burden to us not easy to be supported.

During the halt we made to dine, one of the savages of the horde, who had gone upon the scout, came to inform me, that a few leagues to the right he had discovered one of the angles formed by the Orange in its course, and had perceived the trees skirting its banks. This was joyful news to my troop. We resumed our journey gaily without altering our way, and about four in the afternoon reached the river, having travelled ten leagues in the course of the day.

As master, the first thing I did was to choose an advantageous place for the encampment

of my little caravan. In the midst of the trees on the banks we should have run too much risk, if the Boshmen had come to attack us in the night. Five or six hundred paces on this side of them was a tolerable large clump of shrubs, chiefly consisting of ebónies.

This close and bushy thicket appeared to me well calculated to serve us as a shelter. I directed such trees as were near, and that were capable of obstructing our sight, to be cut down, which required little trouble, as they were all euphorbias, great or small. Then, while some of my people were dispatched on all sides to cut wood for the fires of the night, others were employed, under my direction, in clearing the interior of the thicket, and forming a place capable of containing us. The outer edge we fortified with branches interwoven together, and covered with mats and skins. Lastly, to protect us from such arrows as might fall vertically on our heads, I caused my marquee to be stretched by way of canopy on some stakes, and thus formed a roof, under which we were perfectly sheltered. With these precautions we could fear no nocturnal  
attack



attack in the midst of our fort, in which we might have defied all the Boshmen of Africa.

The oxen were tied up in a circle round the inside of the inclosure, and so near us, that we could almost touch them with our hands. Thus defended, it was impossible to think of carrying them off. But their proximity had one inconvenience; the noise they made by their different movements, and the uneasiness they showed from time to time, and which we considered as indications either of Boshmen or of wild beasts, kept us so constantly on the alarm, that it was impossible for one of us to close his eyes.

The night, however, though very unquiet, passed without our being any otherwise disturbed. We heard nothing but hyænas and jackals, the cries of which, in our situation, were pleasing prognostics, as they convinced us that there were no Boshmen in the plain.

Notwithstanding this proof of security, I was unwilling to resume my journey till the sun had made his appearance. Indeed we had not above five leagues to travel; and, of course, the day was more than sufficient for so short a march. It is true, that as we resolved to proceed

ceed along the wood by the river's side, in order to shorten our way, we could advance but slowly, because, having ambuscades to fear, many precautions were to be taken.

When arrived nearly about half way, we heard the report of some guns fired on the river. I sent to examine what was the occasion of it. Four of my people were hunting hippopotamuses, and when informed of my approach, they came to express their joy, and bring me news of my camp. My long absence had given alarm. Uneasy at hearing no tidings of me, Swanepoel had supposed me to be killed by the Boshmen, with all my party, and that he should never see me again. I dispatched a man on horseback to acquaint him with my return, and two hours after we arrived at the camp.

My first business when I alighted was to take care of the wounded Kaminouqua. I ordered my marquee to be erected for him; and, recommending him to the attention of such of his comrades as appeared the most intelligent, borne down as I was with sleepiness and fatigue, I retired to rest in my waggon. As for my people, they spent the night in  
2  
feasting

feasting, and in giving a minute account of our expedition.

Bernfry, being informed of my arrival by his emissaries, had the audacity again to make his appearance in my camp. His design was to impose upon me with respect to his conduct, and to endeavour to wipe out the suspicions I might have conceived of him. He professed a warm zeal for my welfare, and the greatest personal attachment. He spoke of the horde of robbers, and informed me, that we had killed four or five persons, and severely wounded several others. But he added, that they had sworn to be revenged; and that I must redouble my vigilance and precautions, if I wished to escape a surprise, of which, soon or late, I must inevitably become the victim. My greatest enemy in this business, according to him, was Moodel. It was Moodel who protected the horde, and of him, therefore, I ought to be particularly on my guard.

Thus, the better to deceive me, did the knave betray and point out to my vengeance his comrade and only friend. But his singular villany did not impose upon me. I cut short every explanation and all farther subtlety on his

his part, by pretending to receive his intelligence as very important advice. I even took care not to let him perceive the suspicion I had of himself. By this apparent confidence I left it in my power to watch his conduct secretly. Though, after all, notwithstanding the art he had employed to inspire me with dread, I feared neither Moodel nor himself, nor even the Boshmen.

Besides, as my thoughts were employed on my departure, my sole object was to quit the borders of Orange-River without delay. I had already issued orders for the necessary preparations, and I waited only for their being finished to be gone. This, however, would require time. My carriages wanted repairing, for so injured were they by the heat, that every piece of wood that composed them was loose. My new oxen were also to be broken in; since, having never felt the yoke, they were startled at the very sight of a waggon, and when my people had accomplished the harnessing them, and they heard the noise of the wheels behind, they became furious, and broke or overturned every thing.

The endeavours made to subdue them were  
attended



attended with great risks and labour, which continued a long time; and the fruitlessness of these attempts occasioned me daily fits of impatience. My people, possessing more calmness of temper, were not so easily rebuffed; and they assured me, if I would leave the matter to their management, they would not fail to accomplish their purpose. But the lessons they gave were so severe, that I could not witness them without extreme pain. According to them, these poor animals were too old to submit quietly to the yoke, and there was no hope of bending them to it but by dint of blows.

It is true, there were still five of my former ones remaining, which were yoked with the new ones, that they might be broken in by their example. But before these even would submit to work, they received from my people a good beating with the *Jchalouck*; and this correction was so often repeated, that I found myself absolutely incapable of enduring the spectacle. Accordingly, whenever the lesson began, I took my gun, and rambled to a distance, thereby to be out of sight and hearing of it.

I had hoped that these excursions would recompense me by new acquisitions, and that I should find among the birds that inhabited the woods some addition to my collection. But I was disappointed. The time of their passage was over ; and the great and little bee-eaters, varieties of swallows and other species, had all disappeared.

Another remark which I made while in this part of Africa I consider as too important to be omitted. The moment the hurricane from the south-east, of which I have spoken above, had ceased, the wind veered to the north, where it constantly remained, with a few variations only to the two neighbouring points, north by west, and north by east. Occasionally we had a few showers, but so slight that they scarcely wetted the sand. The sky, however, had continued gloomy and overshadowed, the wind driving before it numerous clouds, which proceeded to accumulate on the mountains of Camis, and prepare the rainy season for the Cape.

This season had already commenced in the mountains to the north, where the Orange takes its source. At least this river, since I crossed

crossed it, that is to say, within a fortnight, had risen more than twenty feet. It flowed now on a level with its banks, and carried along with it several whole trees which it had torn up by the roots, and even formed, in several parts of the plain, extensive lakes. In a word, my camp, which at first had been stationed six hundred paces from the water's edge, and had not been moved, was now distant from it not above fifty. Almost all the trees were nearly covered by it, their tops and a few branches only being perceptible. This sight, one of the grandest I ever beheld in Africa, if it had not been at variance with my schemes, would long have feasted my eyes. Besides other inconveniences to the danger of my caravan, this swell of the river deprived me of the advantage of hunting hippopotamuses; for these amphibious animals, as they do not love muddy and troubled waters, had retired towards the sea-shore.

Many of my new savages belonging to hordes on the other side of the river regretted, on account of its overflow, their having remained so long with me. The Gheyssiquas, on the contrary, free from this occasion of uneasiness,

easiness, and being well fed in my camp, were happy in remaining, and seemed not to think of their departure. But I had engaged to send them back in a week, and I kept my word.

I gave them all more than I had promised. The present designed for the chief was entrusted to his daughter, as he had desired; and I added thereto a pretty red handkerchief for herself, and some white glass beads, which she highly valued. She had been treated with distinction in my camp. No convenience had been denied her, not even that of anointing; and I sometimes attended her toilette, which indeed was always the same, but I every time received fresh pleasure in observing the pains she took to adorn and display her charms, the sight of which rendered me every day more reserved and circumspect.

This troop had scarcely departed, when another arrived, consisting of thirty-six persons, men and women. These were Hottentots who reside on the confines of the colony, and who, buying at second or third hand certain commodities from the planters, travel into the interior of the country there to barter them with other savages for cattle, which on their return  
they



they sell to the co'onists. There are also whites who follow this kind of trade ; but they are far from dealing with the same honesty as the savages of whom I am speaking.

These people arrived from the eastern countries, where they had purchased a herd of about threescore cattle. Having heard of me there, they had endeavoured to find me, and came to ask permission to join my caravan and return with me to their habitations. To this request I gave my consent, informing them, however, that I had as yet neither determined on the day of my departure, nor the road I should take.

With regard to subsistence, I promised to share with them the produce of my hunting, as long as game was to be found : but added, that the moment game failed, and I should be obliged to have recourse to my herd to feed my people, I should then leave them to themselves to get provision as they could. I observed also that I should not furnish them with tobacco ; for my stock of this article, so important to a savage, began to fall short. With regard to my brandy, though I had left a small store at my departure, it was considerably di-

minished at my return. I could not avoid testifying my displeasure at this circumstance to Swanepoel himself, as I suspected him of having yielded to the temptation and consumed it unnecessarily.

The traders thanked me for the readiness of my compliance, as well as for the services I proposed to render them. The conditions I found myself obliged to impose were indeed too reasonable for them to make any objection; and so far from requiring tobacco of me, they had still several rolls remaining of fifteen or twenty pounds each, beside what was necessary for themselves, which they offered to spare me. This offer I accepted, promising to pay them, as soon as we reached the possessions of the Dutch, either in money or in kind, as they should like best.

Nothing yet informed me when I might expect to depart. My people, with all their exertions, could not accomplish the breaking in of my oxen; and the delay thus occasioned, which was pure waste of time, mortified me extremely: however, I attempted to make at least some advantage of it, by looking over my collection, and putting it in order for conveyance.

The

The skin of the giraffe in particular wanted some preparation, for it had become in drying as hard as iron, so that there was no bending it, and of course it could not be carried with any convenience. I first soaked it in the river for a few hours, and then steeped it in a decoction of tobacco, camphor, and soap; and by these means it was rendered so supple, that I could pack it up as I pleased.

Having finished the arrangement of my collection, I employed the leisure that remained in drawing plants and flowers. There were immense quantities in the neighbourhood; and every day the season occasioned fresh ones to blow. But I made my drawings rather as an amateur than a naturalist, and attended only to such as appeared most beautiful and rare.

While speaking of these things, though in another point of view, I cannot help expressing my regret that Sparmann, who was so little pressed for time when he undertook his journey, or Paterfon, who seems to have travelled post, and as a man eager to finish his expedition, had not formed the design of penetrating into the country of the Kabobiquas, and as

far even as the mountains of the Houzou-anas.

What treasures would these learned botanists have found there! And what riches might they not have brought away with them!

I have myself, indeed, but a few score drawings, to prove what science might have gained by their means: yet I invite other travellers to undertake what my little knowledge of botany prevented me from performing; and I dare promise them before hand the most splendid success. But at the same time I must tell them, that they ought to dedicate several years to their researches, without which it will be impossible for them to accomplish their purpose to any great extent.

It is not in Africa as in what are called the temperate countries of Europe. In these, nature gives the earth to vegetate part of the year only, while, during the other part, it is dead and lifeless. In Africa, on the contrary, there is no interruption. The soil, warmed by the continual heat, is always fertile; and every month yields its plants, its flowers, and its fruits. Nor is there, as in Europe, a gradual development and regular succession. It is not  
the



the season, nor is it the greater or less propinquity of the equator, that occasions a more or less abundant vegetation. The sun itself, elsewhere considered as the primary cause of fertility, is here the secondary only. Its heat, it is true, is assisting to the birth, growth, and ripening of vegetables; but they are the rains more particularly that occasion them to spring up and unfold themselves, that determine in great measure the place and time of their appearance, and cause them to show themselves in one place sooner than in another. Now as the rains themselves are owing to the situation of the mountains which attract the clouds, it follows, that they may be very unequally distributed, and that one spot may be deluged with them, while another, properly watered, shall display a vigorous state of vegetation, and a third, dry and parched, exhibit only the image of death and desolation.

From this fortuitous occurrence of the rains, some vegetables have a sort of accidental succession, according to the spots on which they grow, that naturally they ought not to have. Thus in one place a species of flower has just blown, which farther on appeared six weeks

A a 3

before,

before, and which, ten leagues farther still, will perhaps not blossom in less than two months. In Africa, nature is always alive, and her action never benumbed by cold : but it is necessary to be on the watch for her ; and the botanist who traverses the country, without residing in it a considerable time, must expect only the fortune of the day, and will of course bring away with him no other collection than what is afforded him by chance.

At the Cape are daily proofs of what I have said. The colonies have long ago been visited by amateurs of flowers and skilful botanists ; yet every new comer finds something with which to enrich his garden or his herbal. As it happens, perhaps, that no one arrives at the same place, under the same circumstances, and at the same period as another, each meets with plants which they who preceded him neither knew nor had the power of knowing. The two naturalists I mentioned above have enriched science by new discoveries, though they came after so many others.

Though the majority of these successive journeys were made in a short space of time, they have contributed nevertheless to extend  
our

our knowledge, and increase the treasures of natural history. What then would be effected, should a man of information repair to some fertile and more distant spot, and remain a whole year, so as to see all that nature produces there blow in succession under his eye !

What I have said concerning plants is with equal truth applicable to birds; for the influence of the rains, which accelerates or retards the unfolding of the former, cannot fail to occasion great difference in the laying, incubation, and moulting of the latter.

That I may render a double service to persons attempting a similar enterprise to mine, I shall insert here a remark, which I consider as important, and that may save them from many mistakes; which is, that the variation which is observed to take place in the same species of plants, according to the difference of age, of time, and of place, takes place also among the feathered tribe.

This accidental and transitory dissimilitude is sometimes so great, that a person would suppose himself to see individuals totally different; and I have known men learned in books and systems as much deceived in this respect as

others. One of these closet naturalists, for instance, shewed me four birds as so many different species, and even as not belonging to the same genus, with which I was well acquainted, and which I knew to be the same bird, only of different ages.

In the first place, every male when young has the same plumage as his mother; and it is only as he grows older that he assumes that of his sex. I will not venture to affirm that this is an universal and invariable rule; but I have hitherto met with no exception to it, whereas I have verified it, by my own observation, in more than a thousand different species.

Many females too, when they grow so old as to cease laying eggs, undergo a similar change, and assume the more splendid colours belonging to the male of the species, which they retain during the remainder of their lives. This fact is strikingly perceptible in those species in which the male and female very much differ in their colour; as the golden pheasant of China, for instance, now so common in our aviaries, in which the change takes place. I have observed the same transmutation in many other birds, of which I shall



shall speak elsewhere. In some species, and those not few in number, the male alone regularly changes his colour, and assumes once in a twelvemonth the plumage of the female; so that at a certain period of the year all the birds of this species appear to be females. I have in my possession specimens of more than fifty of these changing species, in all their transitions from one hue to another; but the one in which it appears most extraordinary is an African bunting, known by the name of *veuve à épaulettes rouges*\*. The female of this beautiful bird has the simple colours of the skylark, and a short horizontal tail, like that of almost all other birds: the male, on the contrary, is wholly black, except at the shoulder of the wing, where there is a large red patch; and his tail is long, ample, and vertical like that of the common cock. But this brilliant plumage and fine vertical tail subsist only during the season of love, which continues six months. This period over, he lays aside his splendid habiliments, and assumes the more

\* See Buffon's Planches Enluminées, No. 635. V. The orange-shouldered bunting. Latham's Synopsis, vol. II. p. 184. T.

modest dress of his mate. The most extraordinary circumstance is, that the vertical tail also changes to a horizontal one, and the male so exactly resembles the female, that it is not possible to distinguish them from each other.

The female has her turn. When she reaches a certain age, and has lost the faculty of propagating the species, she clothes herself for the remainder of her days in the garb which the male had temporarily assumed; her tail, like his at that period, grows long, and, like his also, from horizontal becomes vertical.

The birds of this species associate together, live in a sort of republic, and build their nests near to each other. The society usually consists of about fourscore females: but whether, by a particular law of nature, more females are produced than males, or for any other reason of which I am ignorant, there are never more than twelve or fifteen males to this number of females, who have them in common.

All that I have here written I have read in the great book of nature. Such observations, perhaps, have no great merit, and I consider them myself as of little value: but they are at least accurate; and the critics who have been  
desirous

desirous of giving me their advice have neither found, nor will be able to find, similar ones, either among their inventors of systems, or in the books of writers whose excursions have never extended beyond the walls of a closet.

My people were still employed in breaking in the oxen, but they were advanced in the business scarcely farther than at the first moment. One day when exercising them, one in particular became furious, and attempted to make his escape. The Hottentot who was nearest endeavoured to stop him, by catching hold of the rope by which he had been fastened; but unfortunately slipping his hand into a running knot, which drew tight round his wrist, he was dragged along by the animal to a considerable distance, and torn and bruised in twenty places before it was possible to extricate him.

Just at that moment Bernfry arrived. He had witnessed the accident, and was also present when I was told of it. Availing himself of the circumstance, he stated to me how imprudent it would be to expose myself on the road with cattle so totally undisciplined, and offered

offered to provide me with a team of six oxen well trained to the yoke, if I would give him in exchange one of my muskets, with twelve pounds of powder, and lead enough to cast two hundred balls.

The bargain would have been sufficiently advantageous to me, and, had he asked triple the value in other articles, I would not have hesitated. But to furnish a man of his character with arms was putting it in his power to do still greater mischief: I therefore positively refused. He, on his part, would hear of no other terms, and there the matter rested, notwithstanding the representations of my Hottentots, who, tired of the pains they had taken to train these untameable beasts, urged me to compliance.

These men, who at first had made a jest of the trouble of breaking them in, now despaired of it. I was well aware of the perplexity of my situation; but I was resolved to suffer any distress rather than consent to the bargain. Accordingly, renouncing all hope of coming to an agreement, I fixed for my departure the 21<sup>st</sup> of May; and, when the day arrived, the oxen were yoked.



The caravan was numerous. Beside the thirty-six dealers in cattle who had requested leave to accompany me, I had ten Nimiquas belonging to a horde near Secretary-Fountain, who purposed to proceed in company with us till they arrived at a ford of the river which they knew, and where they intended to cross it. In short, including both my own people and strangers, the troop consisted of ninety-two persons, of whom seventy-three were men, and nineteen women; and our herd of a hundred and seventy-two oxen, beside sheep.

The river had decreased within a few days; and the Kaminouquas, availing themselves of this circumstance, had returned home with their wounded comrade.

All my caravan was ready to depart. Nothing but my giving the signal was waited for; and I had set one foot on the pole to mount my waggon, when the ox nearest me flung back his heels, and struck me on the leg of the other just as I lifted it from the ground.

I cried out: every one ran to my assistance, not doubting but my leg was broken; and, from the pain which benumbed it and took  
from

from me the capacity of moving it, I had every reason to be of the same opinion; nor was it till the expiration of more than a quarter of an hour, when the numbness went off, that I discovered it to be only a violent contusion.

Klaas, already angry with me, and taking advantage of the severe lesson I had thus received, bluntly addressed himself to Bernfry, offered him twelve pounds of powder and twelve of lead for two of his thill oxen; and, without allowing me time to reflect, instantly ran off with him to fetch them. Klaas was in the right. The two oxen arrived; the price agreed upon was paid; and we departed.

My design was to travel for some time along the side of the river, following its course, and keeping as near as possible to the wood that skirted it. By taking this road, I was sure of water and plenty of grass. My own waggon, by the help of the oxen that Bernfry had sold me, proceeded tolerably well; but with the other two waggons the case was different. Their teams were so refractory and indocile, that they were twenty times on the point of being dashed against the trees, or overturned and thrown down some precipice; and we  
were

were three days in reaching the ford, which ought to have been the work of a single day's journey.

The drivers, tired of their office, and losing all patience, declared that it would be impossible for them to proceed any farther, unless I procured two oxen more, well trained, for the thill of each of the other waggons, as I had for that of my own. This was telling me to buy the four other of Bernfry. Nothing ever cost me so much as this resolution ; but, notwithstanding my reluctance, necessity compelled me to submit to it. Accordingly I sent away the musket that had been demanded as the price, and waited on the banks of the river for the arrival of the oxen.

In the mean time I discharged my obligations to the Nimiquas. Recompened beyond what they had asked for accompanying me, they left me, highly satisfied with my conduct, and crossed the ford to return home.

When the oxen arrived, we also departed ; and, after two encampments and a march of ten leagues by the side of the wood, we halted once more on the strand of the Orange, at which we easily arrived with our waggons

through a commodious defile, where there was not a single tree to incommode us.

Here, however, we perceived to our sorrow, that we could proceed no farther along the river's side, or even along the wood that bordered it, on account of the roads, which were so bad as to be absolutely impassable for waggons.

The 27th, quitting the river till we could find some more convenient route by which to return to it, we proceeded south for four hours before it was in our power to verge to the west, and in that direction travelled six leagues through execrable roads. Being obliged every instant to alight from my waggon and get up again, I despaired of rejoining the river, and was momentarily on the point of abandoning my design. At length, on the evening of the 28th, we arrived, with great labour, at the site of an old kraal, which appeared to have been long abandoned, and where we pitched our camp.

The situation was so pleasant, that I could not resist the temptation of making a stay there. A few paces from our camp was a little wood, through which ran a gentle stream, that afforded



fording water for us and our cattle, and added infinitely to the beauty of the place. Every moment flocks of those ring grouse arrived which I have elsewhere mentioned. I killed them by dozens; and the sport was so productive, that, during my three days abode there, it in part furnished subsistence for all my troop. The trees around were covered with birds of different kinds. There were even some that were new to me, and that served to increase my collection.

Meanwhile some Less Nimiquas, informed of my arrival in their canton, came to visit me, and offer me sheep in exchange for tobacco. From them I heard, for the first time, of the accident that had befallen Pinar; who, after having so much vexed me on the road, had at length parted from me, seven or eight months prior to this period of my travels.

Having offended a horde near which he was encamped, he had nearly been the victim of his imprudence. His oxen had been taken away, his waggon plundered, his Hottentots killed with poisoned arrows, and he himself would have lost his life, if he had not had the

address to conceal himself till he found an opportunity of reaching the colony.

Notwithstanding the reasons I had to be offended with him, I could not avoid pitying his fate. I little thought at that moment that a misfortune of another kind, but still more alarming, awaited us all.

By encamping on the site of the kraal, I sought to console myself for my fatigues. The coolness of the wood, the water by which it was washed, the various flowers that adorned it, of which the fragrance delighted my senses—every thing, in short, seemed to concur in fixing me for a while in this enchanting abode. It was apparently an elysium; but, alas! hell itself was situated by its side. We encamped on an esplanade, about four hundred feet in circumference, and smooth as if it had been levelled by art; but it had long served as a fold for the cattle of the horde.

The excrements of the animals, gradually accumulating, had at length formed a layer several feet thick, which, brayed by their hoofs and moistened with their urine and the rain,

was

was become a stratum of turf, a sulphureous and inflammable soil.

No one had attended to this; no one indeed could have well perceived it; for the whole spot on which we encamped was completely covered with a few inches of fine sand, which had been conveyed thither by the wind. But no sooner had we lighted our nocturnal fires than they communicated to the dried dunghill underneath its covering, and, secretly pervading the mass and penetrating it in every direction, at last inflamed the whole. In proportion as it burned and was converted to ashes, it sunk down, and thereby occasioned vacuities which, affording a passage to the air, increased and spread the combustion. At length, about the middle of the night, the conflagration burst forth, the flames made their appearance, and they who first perceived them gave the alarm of fire to waken the rest and procure assistance.

I was asleep in my waggon: their cries suddenly awaked me; and the reader may judge of my fright, upon seeing twenty pillars of fire ascending from the midst of my camp, my Hottentots removing their huts, howling

like so many spirits of the damned, and running through the flames to collect my cattle, which could not move a step without sinking into the ground, and occasioning the issue of fresh flames.

If extraordinary ideas suggest themselves at such a moment, it is surely excusable; particularly if a person behold, for the first time, so tremendous a phenomenon, and it burst on him suddenly, and with an alarm, in the middle of the night. My first thought was, that a volcano had just opened under our feet, and that we were in the very centre of its crater.

The fire, however, had not yet reached me. My three waggon were to windward, and by a lucky accident appeared to be in no danger for the moment. Accordingly my people called to me to remain quietly where I was, and not be uneasy. Some of them were acquainted with such fires, either from their own experience or from hearsay, so that their heads were not bewildered, and they were capable of giving effectual assistance where it was necessary. All the men and women immediately laid hold of my waggon, and dragged them



so far as to have respecting them nothing to apprehend.

Fortunately no person was lost, and my oxen only suffered by the accident. Several of them were lamed by considerable burns, and one perished in the flames, without its being in our power to afford him assistance.

To behold this huge animal struggling in the midst of the conflagration, the fury of which was increased by his violent plunging, was a sight at once dreadful and sublime ! The distant air rung with his cries. He soon expired. The fire was so strong, that he was roasted to the very entrails ; and when it was extinguished, my people ate his remains, without any farther preparation.

Warned by the fatal accident that might have befallen me, I cannot too strongly recommend to those who may travel in Africa, never to encamp on old deserted kraals. Had the wind blown towards the side where I was situated, there is no doubt but the flames would soon have communicated to my waggons ; and it is more than probable that, as I slept in the one which contained my whole stock of powder, I should have been blown up and  
B b 3 destroyed,

destroyed, and perhaps too before my people had perceived the fire.

The greater part of the night was spent in removing the camp to fresh ground. Our oxen, affrighted at the uproar, and still more at the flames, dispersed themselves in the wood, from which we had great difficulty to dislodge them and collect them round us.

Resuming our journey, we travelled seven leagues west by south: but, the road being execrable, I again approached the river by turning to the north-west. After proceeding four hours in this direction, we arrived at the entrance of a pass, at the end of which I perceived a little square house, covered with thatch, and of which the mud-walls were neatly made and in good condition.

It is impossible to express the uneasiness I felt at the sight of this cottage. I feared that I should find there a second Bernfry, or another Matthew Moodel: but, on my approach, I saw with satisfaction that the house was at present without an owner; and in consequence I took possession of it, and pitched my camp there.

Near the house was a spring of tolerably good  
water ;

water; and behind it a little garden gone to waste, but which, amid the weeds that began to overrun it, still contained lettuces, pease, pumpions, and other culinary vegetables. The pasture around appeared excellent; and the Orange flowed at a small distance from it. In short, the solitary who had erected his hermitage there had chosen a spot equally fertile and pleasant: but I was surprised to see it uninhabited and abandoned; and I asked Klaas Baster, who, knowing the country, might be acquainted with the cause, if he could account for the circumstance.

He informed me that the house had been built by my honest friend Schoenmaker; who, in his wandering life, had made, in this manner, different settlements on the banks of the Orange; and that he had quitted this to remove from the neighbourhood of Bernfry and Moodel, who he was aware owed him no goodwill.

I shall speak farther on of an unfortunate family that I met in the desert on my return to the Cape, and to whom I recommended to occupy this deserted retreat. If they followed

my advice ; if, retired to this corner of the earth, they have found an end of their misfortunes, and enjoy that peace and tranquillity which the world cannot give, they will remember my name. It is pleasing to utter the name of a good man. The names of the oppressor, the traitor, and the assassin, imprint, on the contrary, a lasting horror, which converts the most peaceful abode into the dwelling of wretchedness and apprehension. But I have quitted the deserts of Africa, in which I ought for ever to have remained.

Having fixed ourselves in the hut and surrounding valley, I went to examine the state of the river. It continued to fall. Its water was already much less turbid, and the hippopotamuses began to re-appear. We immediately set about hunting these amphibious animals ; and the same day we killed one, which afforded an ample stock of provision for my troop.

Intending as I did to begin a third journey, I was very desirous of examining the course of the river, and tracing it to its mouth. But the difficulties we had already experienced rendering this scheme impracticable, at least  
with



with my waggons and all my caravan, I took the resolution of making this little excursion on foot with a few only of my people.

The journey could not be otherwise than very fatiguing; but it would take me only a fortnight. Accordingly, encumbering myself with no baggage, I took with me four of my hunters, of whom Klaas was one, a few of my dogs, and set off.

My design being, as I have said, to reconnoitre the Orange, I travelled very scrupulously along its banks, without ever deviating from them, unless compelled to make a circuit by high or steep rocks intervening. After a few days march we discovered an island, which I was anxious to visit, in the hope of finding there some new object to gratify my curiosity.

My companions had no difficulty about the passage, all the savages being excellent swimmers. For my part, I had recourse to the same means as I had employed before in crossing Elephants-River, bestriding the trunk of a tree, while some of my swimmers drew it along before, and the others pushed it behind. The first time I tried this expedient, it had nearly cost me my life; but on this occasion  
the

the passage was short, and I was too far from the sea to have any thing to dread.

Though the island appeared to contain no living creature, we found several hippopotamuses concealed in it, whence I gave it the name of Hippopotamus Island. The moment we appeared, some of these animals being alarmed rushed into the river.

One of them happening to come in the way of Klaas, he fired, and killed it on the spot. It was a young one. But the report of the gun roused others ; and in less than a minute I saw more than a dozen, of all ages and sizes, run to the water and disappear in an instant. I could never have believed that an animal so unwieldy on land should possess in the water such surprising agility.

To pass the night in the island would not have been prudent in me. I was too well acquainted with the rivers of Africa, and particularly the Orange, which by a sudden augmentation might surprise and overwhelm us in the short space of only a few hours. Accordingly, having cut a few morsels from our hippopotamus to supply us with steaks for our supper, we crossed the other arm of the river,  
and

and went to spend the night on the right bank, sufficiently distant, if an inundation took place, to have nothing to apprehend.

My design was to return to the island next morning. But at sun-rise we perceived a vast herd of elephants, which made us alter our resolution. There were at least a hundred of these animals; and many of them had such fine tusks as to afford a strong temptation to my hunters.

As they were within shot, we sent a few balls after them, which put them to flight, and we immediately pursued them: not that we could hope to overtake them; but some of them must have been wounded, and we hoped a few might be wounded mortally. In fact we perceived several traces of blood, which served to guide us in our pursuit, and which we followed great part of the day. But at length, the sun beginning to decline, I was afraid night would surprise me in the midst of the desert, and we regained the banks of the Orange.

The savages term this river the traitor; and nothing indeed can be more treacherous than its sudden swellings. Frequently, when its waters  
are

are at the lowest, it will rise within the space of four-and-twenty hours to the extreme of its highest flood. Sometimes, too, its inundations continue for six weeks or two months together. Now this I had to apprehend; and if the accident had happened, it would have rendered my return to the camp at the deserted house of Schoenmaker, where I had left my waggons, by no means easy.

I deemed it prudent, therefore, to return to the river without delay. In truth, distant from it as we were, we were obliged to hasten our march, which, after the extreme fatigue of a day spent in the chace and without food, was a severe toil. However, we reached it before night; and the next day we swam over again to the island.

On our landing we repaired directly to the hippopotamus, with an intention to procure from it a farther supply of food. On its carcase was a superb vulture, eagerly employed in devouring it. As I had never beheld one so large, my joy may easily be conceived. But this joy was detrimental to the accuracy of my aim; for, in my eagerness, I shot too much on one side, and wounded it but slightly.



Though it had already gorged itself with a considerable quantity of flesh (for, upon opening it, I found in its stomach no less a quantity than six pounds and half), yet its hunger and voracity were such, that it struck its beak into the carcase when attempting to take wing, as if desirous of carrying the whole of it away.

On the other hand, the weight of the flesh it had devoured, rendering it the more heavy, it could not easily rise; so that we had time to reach it before it was on the wing, and we endeavoured to knock it on the head with the butt-ends of our muskets. It defended itself a long time with great intrepidity. It bit or struck at our weapons with its beak, and its strength was still so great that every stroke made a mark on the barrel of the piece. It was subdued, however; and the great pleasure afforded me by the possession amply recompensed all the labour and fatigue of my little excursion.

This vulture, now in my collection, and unquestionably the most beautiful of its genus, forms a new species, hitherto wholly unknown. It is more than three feet high, and eight or nine in breadth of wing. Its strength must  
have

have been very considerable, if we may judge from its muscles and sinews; and I am persuaded there is not a stronger among the whole order of carnivorous birds, not excepting the famous condor, which so many travellers have seen, but of which their descriptions are so different as to render its existence extremely doubtful. Thus much at least is certain—there is no bird of this kind in any known collection, and no naturalist living can affirm that he has seen it. It would seem that all travellers, from their desire of speaking of this bird, have been sure to see it, one at Peru, another in the South Sea, a third in Africa, and so on. In short, it has been met with every where: and Buffon, ingenious in finding similitudes, discovers it in every very large bird mentioned by these men, notwithstanding the little agreement between their descriptions\*.

I too might easily have spoken of a condor; for I have seen many large birds of prey, and among those which I have preserved, there are more than one that I might easily have made pass with the credulous for this carrier-off of sheep; but, whatever such

\* See Buffon's Nat. Hist. of Birds, vol. I. article *condor*.

romancers may say, who affirm they have seen sheep taken up into the air by condors, I maintain that there is not a bird known capable of carrying away in its talons an animal of so considerable a size. Be this as it may, the following is a description of my African vulture, which I have not only seen, but brought away, and which is still preserved in my collection.

Its feathers, the general hue of which is a light brown, are of a particular kind on the breast, belly, and sides, where they are of unequal lengths, pointed, curved like the blade of a sabre, and bristle up distinct from each other. The feathers being thus separated would disclose to view the skin on the breast, if it were not completely covered with a very thick and beautiful white down, which is easily seen between the ruffled plumage.

A celebrated naturalist has said that “no  
“bird has eyelashes, or eyebrows, or at least  
“hair round the eyes like that in quadru-  
“peds.” This assertion, advanced as a general law of nature, is a mistake. Not only the bird of which I am speaking has this peculiarity, but we know of many other species in which

it exists; such as in general all the calaos, the secretary, and several other birds of prey. Beside these eyelashes, the vulture in question has stiff black hairs on its throat. All the head and part of the neck are bare of feathers; and the naked skin, which is of a reddish colour, is dashed in certain places with blue, violet, and white. The ear, in its external circumference, is bounded by a prominent skin, which forms a sort of rounded conch, that must necessarily heighten the faculty of hearing in this species. This kind of conch is prolonged for some inches, and descends down the neck, which has induced me to give it the epithet of oricou, a name that I shall retain in my history of birds, where I shall give a minute description of it. In the mean time I shall insert here an accurate figure of this rare vulture.

Eager to prepare my oricou, I quitted the island before sunset, and hastened to the left bank of the Orange, there to pass the night. The next day I continued my journey, still following the course of the river.

Apprehensive of wanting food, we carried away with us a portion of our hippopotamus.

But



But the precaution was unnecessary. As we approached the mouth of the river, we found upon it an infinite multitude of grouse, flamingoes, pintadoes, geese, ducks, and other birds of different species. The number was even so great, that we made no provision, gave ourselves no concern in the morning for what we should sup upon at night.

I found also, among these birds intended for our table, some not unworthy to form a part of my collection. These I prepared on the spot; and, that they might not become too troublesome from the number of the packets, I stuffed them into the belly of my oricou, which thus served me as a portmanteau.

The trees were full of a particular kind of monkeys, of which also I was desirous of procuring one for my collection. But these animals were too cunning; and, in spite of all the stratagems we employed, we could never get within shot of them.

On our way we met with three Hottentots, who were much surpris'd at seeing us. One of them spoke fluently the Dutch language, having lived a long time in the colony. By them we were informed, that we had at least

four days journey before we could reach the mouth of the river ; that there we should run great risk of being massacred by the Boshmen, who were numerous in all those parts ; and that we should find the country, as we proceeded, more arid than any we had yet seen. I have always suspected that these men were themselves some of the Boshmen, of whom they wished to inspire us with fear. They had no doubt their reasons for endeavouring to prevent us from advancing farther, where their horde probably was ; but we could never learn whence they came, or what brought them to the place where they found us. Thus much is certain—the first of these men that perceived us endeavoured to conceal himself, was very uneasy when we discovered him, and it was not till some minutes after that we found there were three of them. They had all arrows which were poisoned, and each carried, besides, an assagay, the point of which was formed of a well-sharpened fish-bone. This adventure excited suspicions in our little party. Too weak to brave every danger, we held a council ; and, as the time I had intended to bestow on our excursion was expired, we unanimously

mously agreed to return, and repair directly to the camp the way we had come. As, however, it would have been very imprudent to place any confidence in these three men, who appeared to us in so very equivocal a light, I compelled them to follow us till we were nearly arrived. In consequence we seized all their arms, promising to do them no injury, and that they should infallibly be returned to them. They delivered up their weapons with a good grace, but not without displaying symptoms of fear, and assuring us we had nothing to apprehend, and that they had no ill design. Though we professed to believe them, I deemed it prudent to act in this manner, lest they should be spies sent to get information of our numbers and strength.

I much regretted this termination of my excursion, by which I was prevented from seeing the mouth of Orange-River, the geographical situation of which Paterfon has laid down in his travels on the authority of Colonel Gordon. He places it in the latitude of  $28^{\circ} 33'$ ; and its longitude "differs but little," he says, "from that of the Cape."

As I had lived in the same house with

Gordon, and had always observed him scrupulously exact in his researches and operations, I confess I could find nothing like his style in this phraseology; and I was the more surprised, as, according to all the best maps, this pretended *differs but little* is a difference in reality of at least thirty leagues. I suppose, therefore, Paterson's memory to have failed him, and that, not recollecting the Colonel's exact expression, he substituted in its stead a vague and erroneous expression of his own.

After declaring to our prisoners that we would shoot them without hesitation if they attempted to escape, we returned towards the camp the way we had agreed. On the road, the Hottentot of the colony, of whom I have spoken, had the appearance of resuming his usual tranquillity; but his two comrades displayed considerable embarrassment and dejection. At night they seemed to take heart a little, conversed with us, and gave themselves out for Less Nimiquas, whose language in fact they spoke. This did not prevent my watching them: they might be Less Nimiquas, and yet at the same time be Boshmen or malefactors; for I have already remarked more than  
once,



once, that the Boshmen in general are vagabonds of every nation, who associate together to rob and plunder all travellers indiscriminately.

Before we retired to sleep, I ordered that some one should keep watch till midnight, and then that another should take his place till break of day. Klaas took the first watch, and was relieved by another, who probably fell asleep, for towards day one of my people cried to arms, and awakened us in haste. He was struggling with one of the Lefs Nimiquas, who attempted to take from him his fusée: but we no sooner appeared, than the Nimiqua let go his hold, and ran off with speed. His comrade was already gone. The Hottentot we stopped. I ordered his hands to be tied behind him, and his legs to be bound, so that he could not run away and escape from us. While we were thus fettering him, he called to his two comrades with all his might; but they took care not to return. He protested his innocence, and declared he had no concern in the plot either of running away or robbing us of our fire-arms. We pretended to believe him; but in the mean time

I did not let him loose on the credit of his word. I promised, however, that no harm should be done him, unless an attack were made upon us, when he might be assured he should be the first victim. This little nocturnal adventure convincing us that we had really reason to be apprehensive of the Boshmen, we took the resolution of quitting the trees by the river's side and marching across the plain, where, being more open, we ran less risque of being surprised. Our fettered Hottentot retarded our progress considerably, so that we were obliged to untie his legs in order to advance with greater speed. When we were four leagues from the camp, night overtook us; and, notwithstanding our wish to arrive there as soon as possible, we were obliged to halt, being completely fatigued with the journey of the day, in which we had travelled at least a dozen leagues over a sandy country, and unsheltered from the beams of a scorching sun. Having taken all necessary precautions to prevent the escape of our prisoner, we passed the night in perfect quiet. At day-break, having nothing more to fear from his connexions as we were so nigh the camp, I ordered him be unbound  
and

and set at liberty, advising him, however, not to appear again near any place where I was travelling. Resuming our way, we arrived at the camp at an early hour.

I found there a Kaminouqua chief, a man in years, with about twenty of his people, who waited to pay his respects to me, and offer me a live ant-bear, which he had just caught. This animal, very difficult to be procured, and by no means common in cabinets of natural history; hides itself in the ground, and hunts only by night. Like those of Guiana and other known countries, it lives entirely on ants. It attacks even the termites in their subterranean retreats; and nature has given it long broad claws, a little crooked, both on the fore and hind feet, with which it opens and breaks to pieces their nests, and with which it digs its own burrow.

In the shape as well as in the length of its tongue, which was sixteen inches, it resembled ant-bears in general; but in other respects it differed from them, particularly in having a smooth tail, and its body covered with stiff short hair. This animal, which is extremely fat, is considered by the Hottentots and planters as delicious food, to which no other

can be compared. The Kaminouquas who brought it to me talked in the same style. I was desirous of tasting it after it was killed; but I found in it such a musky flavour, and so execrable a taste of ants, that I was obliged instantly to spit out the morsel I put into my mouth. What was to me so disagreeable was the very circumstance that rendered it exquisite to the palate of the savages. Nor is this to be wondered at, since, eating with eagerness the nymphs of ants, it is natural they should relish flesh that has a similar taste.

This ant-bear is called in the colonies *erd-verken* (earth hog), and by the Kaminouquas *goup*.

I would gladly have treated the chief and his companions with brandy, by way of testifying my gratitude for the present they had made me: but I have already said, that, on my return to my camp at Orange-River after an excursion of four months, my casks, entrusted to the care of Swanepoel, were almost empty. I had filled four small bottles out of what was left by way of reserve, and the remainder I had given to my people, telling them that they would have no more from me till we arrived at



at the colony, and that they were at liberty to drink it up at once, or husband it, just as they thought proper.

This slender store, which it was necessary for me to keep for extraordinary occasions, I could not think of consuming at once, by giving a bumper to each of my guests. I treated, therefore, only the chief, and four aged Kaminouquas, whom I distinguished in the troop, intending to recompense the others by a present of some toys; and upon this occasion I witnessed an action, as I have elsewhere mentioned, that filled me with admiration and esteem.

The chief, unwilling to enjoy alone a pleasure not shared by his companions, his friends, and brothers, kept in his mouth the liquor he might have swallowed, and, approaching his lips to theirs, thus distributed it, one after another, among all his people, reserving for himself nothing but the feeling and the flavour. The four old men followed his example; and, by this singular mode of sharing it, every one partook of the gift.

Men of delicacy, people of fashion, it is to you this noble lesson is addressed! It will excite,

cite, no doubt, your disgust. Your cleanly mouths, your salve-softened lips, would refuse this fraternal communication. For my part, I was moved even to tears, and throwing myself into the arms of this venerable chief I pressed him closely to my heart.

In the course of my last day's journey, I had observed on the way a tree, with an enormous nest of those birds to which I have given the appellation of republicans; and I had intended, as soon as I arrived at my camp, to send and have it cut down, that I might open the hive, and examine its structure in its minutest parts. Accordingly I dispatched a few men with a waggon to bring it to me. When it arrived, I cut it to pieces with a hatchet, and saw that the principal and fundamental piece consisted of a mass of Boshmen's grass, without any mixture, but so compact and firmly knit together as to be impenetrable to the rain. This nucleus is the commencement of the structure; and each bird builds and applies to it its particular nest. But these cells are formed only beneath and around the mass; the upper surface remains void, without, however, being useless; for,

for, as it has a projecting rim, and is a little inclined, it serves to let the water run off, and preserves each dwelling from the rain. Figure to yourself a huge irregular mass, the summit forming a kind of roof, and all the other parts of the surface completely covered with cells squeezed one against another, and you will have a tolerably accurate idea of these singular edifices.

Each cell is three or four inches in diameter, which is sufficient for the bird. But as they are all in contact with one another through the greater part of the surface of the mass, they appear to the eye to form but one building, and are distinguishable from each other only by a little external aperture, which serves as an entrance to the nest; and even this is sometimes common to three different nests, one of which is situated at the bottom, and the other two at the sides.

Paterfon in his travels mentions this subject of natural history; but his attention being too much employed by others which were more particularly interesting to him, he was unable to examine it with sufficient care. According to him, the number of cells increasing in proportion to the increase of inhabitants, the  
old

old ones become “ sleeping-rooms, and streets  
“ of communication, formed by line and level.”

No doubt, as the republic increases the cells must be multiplied also. But it is easy to imagine, that, as the augmentation can take place only on the surface, the new buildings will necessarily cover the old ones, which must therefore be abandoned.

Should these even, contrary to all probability, be able to subsist, it may be presumed that the depth of their situation, by preventing any circulation and renewal of the air, would render them so extremely hot as to be uninhabitable. But while they thus became useless, they would remain what they were before, real nests, and change neither into streets nor sleeping-rooms \*.

The large nest that I examined, was one of the most considerable I had any where seen in the course of my journey, and contained three hundred and twenty inhabited cells, which, supposing a male and female to each, announce a society of six hundred and forty individuals,

\* We find in Paterfon a particular account of the nests in question, but nothing that at all answers to the idea of sleeping-rooms, which is probably a misconception of the French translator. T.



Such a calculation, however, would not be exact. I have spoken above of birds among which one male is in common to several females, because the females are much more numerous than the males. The same is the case with many other species, both in the environs of the Cape and in the colony; but it is particularly so among the republicans. Whenever I have fired at a flock of these birds, I have always killed four times as many females as males.

For the rest, these birds have nothing very remarkable in their plumage. It is an uniform brown grey, diversified by a few black spots on the sides, and a large patch of the same colour on the throat. The male is a little larger than the female; in other respects they exactly resemble each other.

It often happens that one republic is expelled by another. This may easily be conceived; and I have already had occasion to remark, that I had seen one of their towns become the conquest of a troop of little parrots.

The birds that commit these depredations are those which, like the barbets, pies, titmice,  
and

and the parrots I have just mentioned, possess a superiority in offensive weapons, by the strength of their bills, which the weak and unfortunate proprietors cannot resist. But among these intruders are none but such as make their nests in holes, or the hollows of trees, like the species I have enumerated.

The republicans, not being known in the colonies, have no Dutch name. The Nimi-quas call them in their language *anagues*, with the clapping prefixed.

I remained five weeks at the hermitage of Schoenmaker. At length I quitted it, to visit a horde of Lefs Nimiquas, about five leagues from our camp, where a grand hunt of spring-buck antelopes was to take place. The chief had invited us to be of the party, not doubting but our fire-arms would contribute greatly to its success. I accepted the invitation with pleasure, as much with a view to render them a service, as again to see a hunt of the nature of those which I have already had occasion to mention. It was possible, too, this might present me with some new circumstances and particular manœuvres. The party was appointed for the next day; and all were busy,

4

men,

men, women, and children, in making the necessary preparations.

At the entrance of a defile formed by two hills, two rows of stakes were planted; which, placed at a small distance from each other like the trees of a grove, gradually diverged as the row lengthened, till they reached a considerable way into the plain. The stakes were three feet high, and had a thong passed along their tops, from one to another. To this thong, here and there, ostrich feathers were hung.

But as it would have been impossible to have procured thongs enough to extend the whole length of the two rows, where they were wanting, the stakes were furnished with bundles of ostrich feathers, wings of birds, ends of tails, pieces of skins, and even whole kroffes; any thing, in short, that it was thought might serve to frighten the game.

The snare began at the very opening of the defile, where were dug, chequerwise, about twenty pits, ten feet deep by six or seven wide, and covered on the surface so as to be completely hidden, though so slightly that the least weight would break in the covering. The  
chace

chase consisted in making the antelopes enter between the two rows of stakes; once there, they were easily driven into the defile where the pits were dug. Such as passed over these pits without tumbling in fell into other ambuscades, where the people of the horde waited for them, lying flat on their bellies, to shoot them with their arrows the moment they issued from the defile.

The whole of the day was employed in conveying to the place and erecting the apparatus I have described; and the next day, at three in the morning, we set off for the rendezvous. As it was at some distance, we did not arrive there till break of day. I mounted one of my horses, and Klaas another; and I was followed by some of my hunters, and all my dogs in their leashes. Several of the savages of the horde remained with me, while the rest placed themselves in ambuscade along the palisades, to prevent the antelopes from leaping over.

As the sun was rising we perceived, about half a league from us, a considerable herd of spring-bocks chased by a party of the savages. I directed my people to advance in file along



one of its flanks, that thereby the herd might imperceptibly be driven between the stakes. We soon got near, and began to press them more closely. At length, when I saw that those who took the lead were fairly entered into the tunnel, I and Klaas drove full gallop after their rear, shouting aloud, and firing our fuses and pistols, while my party seconded us by the discharge of theirs, and the others by their cries.

This noise was a signal for the savages concealed near the stakes, who all rose up, making at the same time such a hideous yell, that the uproar became tremendous. The animals, frightened and urged on all sides, pressed disorderly upon one another, as they fled in a column, and exhibited an amusing spectacle.

Curious to know what passed at the head and near the pits, I galloped thither, expecting to find them filled by the antelopes tumbling in in heaps. But I was deceived. These animals are extremely cunning. The leading ones only fell into the trap; which the rest, as soon as they discovered it, escaped by leaping over.

For more than half an hour that the passage

continued, this leaping ceased not a moment ; and never did I witness a spectacle similar to what was afforded by these thousands of animals, running like the wind, and half of them at a time in the air.

Some were killed by our shot, some by our dogs, and others stifled in the throng ; but thirty-seven only were found in the pits ; and even most of these were in the first holes. The Nimiquas also had wounded several with their poisoned arrows ; and, though these fled away with the rest, they hoped soon to find them.

This hunt did not at all strike me as being very successful. Considering, indeed, the preparations that were made, and the quantity of game we saw, I even thought it a bad one. The people, however, were of a different opinion, and told me that so wonderful a one had not been known in the memory of man.

They commonly deemed themselves fortunate if they procured a dozen antelopes. Frequently they had even the vexation not to get more than a single one ; which happened sometimes when the herd was small, or when, the  
number

number of people employed to start and lie in wait to frighten the game being too few, the animals, less terrified, fled with less precipitation. In such cases the leading antelope only fell into the snare ; the rest, warned by his fall, leaped over the pits. In fact, I had perceived in the present hunt the truth of this remark ; and it may be inferred, that our success had been chiefly owing to my guns and my dogs.

Our game was now to be conveyed to the kraal ; but the day being too far advanced, we agreed to defer this business till the next day, and to spend the night on the field of battle. We sent, however, for some oxen. At day-break they arrived ; and we returned to the horde in triumph, attended by the produce of our chase.

This was sufficiently abundant to give every family reason to rejoice. Equal portions were distributed to each, and part was employed to furnish out a regale, to which the horde added some fat sheep : for among the savages there can be no feasting without fat, and particularly that of mutton. The feast was concluded by a dance, which continued all night ; the party

not breaking up till the sun made its appearance.

While they were all preparing to sleep, I took leave of my guests, and directed my steps across the long Valley of Spring-bocks. The valley had no name; but I so called it on account of a vast herd of these animals, which I found there, and which was more numerous than any I had ever seen. I am not afraid of exceeding the truth, if I say it was composed of sixty or eighty thousand. In short, the whole day was spent in travelling seven leagues, and all the way we saw nothing but spring-bocks before us, and on every side. They seemed to fill the valley and block up the passage against us.

The next morning we were able to advance no more than three leagues; but it was for another reason. In passing a difficult road, one of my waggons was overturned. The pole was broken, as were three spokes of the hind wheels; and, to increase our misfortune, we were obliged to unload it before we could get it up again.

The loss of the pole was easily supplied, as  
I had



I had a spare one under each waggon: but it required some time to repair the wheel; and, the place not being convenient for the purpose, I deferred it till the next day. A few branches were interwoven between the spokes of the wheels to support the broken ones; the waggon was lightened, by distributing part of its load between the other two; and in this state we were able to proceed four leagues farther, and arrive on the banks of a river, which afforded us a favourable situation for our encampment, and the repair of the wheel of the carriage. It was the 12th of July: a memorable day—which I shall never forget, as I was then first attacked by a disease, which had nearly cost me my life: it was memorable also on another account, and I shall always recall it to mind with secret satisfaction, for it procured me the pleasure of doing a good action, and rendering a whole family happy.

On my arrival I felt myself not well; I had a shivering, and a great heaviness in my head. But these symptoms did not alarm me, as I ascribed them to the extreme fatigue I had undergone in my excursion towards the north of Orange-River, together with that of my

last hunt. With this idea, supposing that all I wanted was rest, I went and lay down in my waggon, in order to relieve myself by sleep—which, however, I was not fated to find.

Klaas in the mean while directed my tent to be pitched. As this was doing, he perceived at a distance a waggon that appeared to bend its course toward us, and he ran to inform me of the circumstance as a piece of good news. More than a year had elapsed since I had received any letters from the Cape. I was totally ignorant of what had happened there since my departure; and these strangers would perhaps bring me information.

This thought made me forget my illness. I leaped instantly out of bed, and ran to meet them.

The waggon was drawn by a team of ten oxen, under the guidance of five Hottentots. Three lean cows and a few sheep followed them. The travellers themselves were four in number, a man, his wife, and two children. But men, waggon, and animals, indicated extreme poverty, as did the garments that covered even the master and mistress.

I was involuntarily moved with pity at the sight,

sight. They on the contrary testified the most lively joy at seeing me. Their eyes, their looks, their motions, every thing declared it. The man and his wife in particular could not express their satisfaction. The meeting me, they said, was the height of felicity; and they should consider this day as the most fortunate of their lives.

Having never seen them before, it was impossible for me to conceive the reason of this joy, which was so strikingly contrasted by their indigence and rags. I was eager to know it; yet, till we arrived at the camp, and their waggon was drawn up by mine, I could not well ask them to satisfy my curiosity. I then conducted them to my tent, offered them some refreshment, which they accepted, and we entered into conversation.

The husband, who, as well as his wife, was born in Africa, was one of those weak and inconsiderate men, of whom we meet so many every day, and who, desirous of ease and the comforts of this life, but naturally indolent, seek to enrich themselves in some short way, that they may enjoy the more speedily happiness and quiet. This man, seeing no

mode in the colony of making a fortune so rapidly as he wished, and having heard of the acquisitions that had been made among the Nimiquas by certain individuals, took it into his head to visit them in like manner; flattering himself, that in their country he should meet with what he had in vain sought for at home, and never once dreaming that wherever activity, industry, and good sense are, qualities to which he appeared to have no claim, there also fortune is to be found and no where else. The wonders of the Nimiqua land he had long heard of, and he had often been advised to settle in this pretended paradise, where all the wealth of the globe, and all its most valuable productions, awaited his coming.

Several, it is true, while they confirmed the fables that prevailed respecting the wealth of this country, so abundant in mines of gold, had terrified him at the same time by the numerous obstacles which they told him he would have to contend with. They spoke of Boshmen, tigers, lions, and wild beasts of every kind; and these, they said, were what prevented the planters from settling there.

For a time, these fabulous terrors had rendered



dered him wavering: but the thirst of gold had at length prevailed; and the almost certainty of finding it had led him thus far on his way. Five wretched Hottentots attended him in this wearisome pilgrimage.

By report my name had been known to him in the colony, and he had just learned that I had traversed the country near the Orange. In consequence he inquired after my route, and directed his course so as to fall in with me. Chance had favoured him beyond his expectations: and thence arose the extraordinary joy he testified at seeing me.

The conversation, as will readily be supposed, almost wholly turned on the land of promise towards which he was travelling—that wonderful land, so fertile in gold, silver, and rubies, that he was to pick them up by handfuls along the rocks and in the rivers! He talked with rapture of these imaginary treasures. Persuaded, no doubt, that my waggon was loaded with them, he expected from my civility that I should direct him to their beds; and had depended on obtaining from me all the information he wanted.

I allowed him to vent at his ease all the fol-  
lies

lies with which his head had been stuffed, and made it a point not to interrupt him. The idea of opening his eyes and destroying hopes which, mad and chimerical as they were, rendered him happy, was absolutely painful to me. To dissipate his illusion, and tell him the truth, was to render him miserable: yet was it necessary to be done. I ordered, therefore, all the specimens of minerals, all the stones and coloured crystals, which I and my people had collected, to be placed before him; and showing him this supposed wealth, the nature and value of which he might himself examine and appreciate, "This," said I to him, "is what you will find."

The exhibition was a thunderstroke to this deluded and happy couple. They ran their eyes over the different substances, and then looked at each other with an air of dejection and amazement which it is easier to imagine than describe. Yet, notwithstanding this mode of convincing them, they still appeared at intervals perplexed and undecided in their minds. Because I did not show them money ready coined, it did not follow that nothing to coin it with was to be found in the country. The  
illusion

illusion every moment returned to their minds : they set against my testimony the unanimous assertions of the planters, and the constant tradition of fourscore years. Soon, however, the curtain dropped again ; the truth once more stared them in the face ; and the false opinion they had conceived from what had been told them was at length completely dissipated.

To suffer them any longer to remain in this painful state would have been cruel in me. Disappointment was already figured on their countenances, and their fixed dejected look denoted how profound was their sorrow. I had destroyed all their hopes ; they were too well convinced for their happiness ; and I thought it time to revive their spirits, by substituting rational schemes for wild and senseless chimeras.

Ignorance misrepresents in its accounts the ill as much as the good ; because, unable to estimate the value of either, it exaggerates both. When imaginary treasures had been announced to these people, they had at the same time been terrified by dangers equally unfounded. It was necessary therefore, in the first place, to dissipate their fears, and represent the country  
to

to which they were going, just as it was, without any deception.

Relating to them nothing but what I had recently seen with my own eyes, they could not avoid placing some confidence in my testimony. I accordingly gave them a brief account of every thing most remarkable that had happened to me in the different parts of the country, scrupulously delineating both the good and the bad, without concealing any thing of either. I then advised them to give up the mad and chimerical ideas which had engendered in them such covetous desires; and told them, that if, instead of losing time in seeking gold and gems in a country where they were not to be found, they would form a settlement there, they might bring up their children with ease, and live in happy and peaceful competence.

Many prejudices respecting the savages had been instilled into their minds. On this point I undeceived them; and, citing my own example, I gave them to understand what great services they might expect from these people, if they would form like me an intimacy with them, gain their favour by a few acts of friendship,



ship, and pursue the conduct which I had found so successful. Finally, though it was in complete opposition to their ideas, I advised them, not without regret, to avoid all intercourse with certain white men whom they would find in their neighbourhood. These, I assured them, were their real enemies, the only ones they had to fear, and against whom they must always be on their guard.

During the whole of my discourse, the eyes of the woman were attentively fixed on me; and I saw, by the alteration of her countenance, the profound impression it made upon her. The great respect and high esteem she entertained for her husband, however, occasionally intervened to destroy this impression. She endeavoured to discover in his looks what he thought upon the subject, that she might thereby determine what to think herself. If joy or hope were expressed on his countenance, hers expanded at the same moment: if he looked thoughtful and uneasy, her features partook of the change, and she became uneasy too. So much love for so much wretchedness rendered her affection respectable in my eyes.

The man appeared to be convinced of the

wholesomeness of my advice, and confessed that, if we desire wealth, it is a more certain way to take the trouble to acquire it by our labour, than to endeavour to find it ready made to our hands. But one great difficulty stood in his way ; which was his poverty.

Poor and helpless, what would become of him in the wild and uncultivated desert to which he was repairing ? Without merchandise, how could he hope to gain the friendship of the neighbouring hordes, and form a connection with them ? In fine, without implements, without utensils, without furniture, or materials to make any, without provision, and in short destitute of every thing, how could he form a settlement, and begin a way of life for which he was totally unprepared ? The most important articles belonging to this travelling family were a musket in no very good condition, and a small trunk, about two feet square, which contained the whole of their wardrobe.

Good advice, well-timed, has no doubt its value ; but the poor, said I to myself, want more than advice : and in consequence, to give these pilgrims a proof how much I was interested in their welfare, I described to them  
the

the little hermitage of Schoenmaker, in which I had passed a few weeks so pleasantly. I spoke also of the smiling valley and delightful wood in which it was situated; and I omitted at the same time neither the beautiful rivulet that ran by the house, nor the little garden in which several of the culinary vegetables of Europe were still to be found, nor the proximity of the river, which would afford the amusement of fishing, and the advantage of hunting the hippopotamus. Finally, though this pleasant estate did not belong to me, and I had not in reality the least title to it, I took upon me to make them an offer of it, and invited them to take possession, assuring them that no one would dispute their claim.

I intended, indeed, to acquaint Schoenmaker with the circumstance, and had no doubt but he would approve of what I had done. And as to himself, I purposed by means of the friendship of Serrurier and Gordon, when I arrived at the Cape, to obtain his pardon. My expectations were not disappointed. I have already said that I accomplished my purpose, and restored to the colony an honest man, who has since become a very successful planter.

The

The man and his wife embraced my offer with those expressions of gratitude which an important service is sure to draw from susceptible minds ; and I concluded with telling them, that to arrive at the valley and the house in question would be a business attended with little difficulty, as they would only have to follow the traces of my waggons.

This conversation had occupied a considerable portion of my evening. Before we separated for the night, I treated the travellers with tea and coffee ; and they retired to their beds, joy sparkling in their countenances as they quitted me, at which I confess I was sensibly affected.

For my part, I went and threw myself again on the mattress in the waggon. My illness and headach however were so increased, that I could not sleep for a single moment during the whole night. I ought to have felt some anxiety about the cause of this sleeplessness ; but I still deceived myself, and ascribed it to the emotion this singular adventure had occasioned me.

The next morning, my visitors came to tell me that, still more confirmed in their resolution of embracing my proposal than on the preceding evening, they were about to prepare  
for



for their departure : upon which I gave them every information respecting the people of the country, and the advantage they might derive from them for the improvement of their situation.

Resolved however, notwithstanding this advantage, to render their abode as agreeable as was in my power, I intended to bestow on them a small stock of such things as would be necessary, or at least useful, to them in their new settlement. I had still by me some salt provision, and particularly the flesh of the last hippopotamus we had killed. With this flesh I ordered a leathern bag to be filled, and carried to their waggon. To this I added a few toys, some brass-wire for making bracelets, some nails, powder, shot, and indeed every thing I thought capable of contributing to their pleasure or their security, and enabling them to trade for what they might want. Lastly, I gave them four sheep, a goat with kid, a cock and hen from my brood of chickens, and the youngest of my dogs.

The good people scarcely knew how to express their gratitude.

“ I am now about to leave you,” said the husband, “ and perhaps I shall never see you  
VOL. III. E c “ again :

“ again : but while I have a spark of life re-  
“ maining in my body, I shall never forget  
“ you, or cease to bless your name. I was  
“ going to expose myself to perish with hun-  
“ ger and despair, and you have stopped me  
“ on the border of the gulph. I was without  
“ resource, and you have rendered me happy.  
“ Blessed be the day on which I met with  
“ you ! Every year I will repair to this place  
“ with my family, to celebrate it on the banks  
“ of this very river, to pour out my vows for  
“ you, and recall to my remembrance so im-  
“ portant a benefit.”

While in Africa, I gave to the brook by which I was encamped when the planter of whom I have been speaking met with me the name of *Riviere de la Rencontre* (river of our meeting) : but, after my arrival in Europe, I changed it to that of Laborde, who took such extraordinary care in finishing the map of my travels, as a slight testimony of gratitude, which I addressed to this friend at the very juncture when hordes of civilized robbers murdered him, amidst the heap of victims sacrificed to the vilest of mankind by the most cowardly of men.

While the oxen of my new acquaintance  
were

were putting to his waggon, I ordered mine to be yoked also. My pains hourly increased. They had already very much weakened me, and I began to be alarmed. What would become of me, should I be attacked with a serious malady! I had but one resource, that of reaching the colony, if possible, before it declared itself.

I set off, therefore, immediately; and, being too feeble to mount on horseback, I at first lay at my length in the waggon. But it was not possible for me to bear its motion. My headache was so violent, and the jolting gave me so much pain, that I found it necessary to leave it and mount one of my horses, notwithstanding my weakness. In this manner I arrived at the mountains of Kaussi, near the brook which, taking its rise in these mountains, bears the same name.

I longed to alight, that I might lie down. The fatigue of the journey and the heat of the day had made me worse. I felt myself in a burning fever, and experienced extreme pain in swallowing, which I at first supposed to be a common fore-throat, but which, in the course of the night, from the inflammation of the

pharynx and the swelling of the tonsils, showed itself to be a quinsy.

I thought myself lost. This disease in Africa is almost always mortal, and, besides being more painful than in Europe, is of much longer continuance. What could I do in such alarming circumstances, not only unskilled as I was in physic, but destitute of the remedies which the planters employed in such cases?

My Hottentots, to whom all diseases are the same, and who consequently have but one method of cure, were desirous of employing it on the present occasion. It consisted in dipping napkins in boiling milk, and applying them scalding hot round my neck. This treatment, which is their sovereign panacea, their universal remedy, was observed for three days together. For three days I had the civility to suffer myself thus to be burnt; but at length, fatigued and tortured to no purpose, I refused to submit any longer to the pain, and left myself entirely to nature.

My situation was become deplorable. I could swallow nothing but a few drops of very  
weak



weak tea, and this with great difficulty. My tongue and throat were so swelled, that I spoke only by signs. At length my respiration became so painful, and was so much impeded, that I every moment expected to be suffocated.

The consternation of my people became general. Klaas and Swanepoel alone entered my tent; and they attended me alternately. But when either of them came to me, I immediately saw the heads of all the rest collected together at the entrance of my tent, and stretched out as far as possible, endeavouring to read in his looks what they had to hope or fear.

Affuredly, if ever there was a moment in my life when I thought myself near my end, it was this. Thus then two long, laborious, and dangerous journeys were to terminate! Unable to speak, and to give any orders about my collections, what would become of the fruit of all my fatigues!

Had the fever that consumed me been accompanied with delirium, and had I lost the sense of my situation and the painful anxiety inseparable from it, I should have been less pitiable: but, to my extreme misfortune, my

senses were in nowise deranged; I saw death approaching with slow steps, and experienced all its horrors.

I had given myself over for near a week, when Swanepoel came to announce to me the arrival of some Lefs Nimiquas of a neighbouring horde. These good savages had heard of my disorder; and, in consequence of the friendship for me with which I had the felicity to inspire their nation, had come to offer to effect my cure, and propose a remedy, for the success of which they would pledge themselves, they said, if I would but consent to entrust myself in their hands.

Could a dying man, so circumstanced, listen with indifference to the voice that promised him life? Besides, had poison been offered me, my sufferings had continued so long, and were become so insupportable, that from weariness, and to put an end to them, I should instantly have taken it. I made a sign, therefore, that I consented; and my physicians prepared the remedy.

This too was a hot topical application; but, instead of being made of milk like the former, it consisted of a certain herb; and, beside the  
cataplasin,

cataplasm, the juice of the herb was to be used as a gargle. I was prejudiced against those burning collars with which my neck was again to be surrounded; and, when I saw Klaas bringing me this new-prepared one, I felt, I confess, some repugnance. But the gargle had such an agreeable smell, its taste was so sweet and balsamic, and nature appeared to give me so sudden and powerful an inclination for it, that one of the remedies induced me to submit to the other.

The cataplasm was renewed several times in the night; and I repeated the gargle still more frequently. At length, when day appeared, to my great joy I found myself eased. I could already breathe with more freedom; the swelling and inflammation of the pharynx were abated; every moment I continued to get better; at length I was able even to swallow, and then by order of my Esculapius I was to take cold milk.

In a state of continual fever as I was, this cold milk appeared to my European prejudices a strange prescription: but what were prejudices to confidence founded on success! I resigned myself blindly to the guidance of my

physician, and I had every reason to applaud myself for doing so.

By the third day I found myself cured. My quinsy was gone, my fever had left me, the swelling had subsided, and my throat was free. I had nothing of my disease remaining but an extreme weakness, which did not prevent me from feeling myself to be out of danger, and how much I was indebted to the individual who had been the instrument of my cure. I desired to see him, and he was introduced to me.

It was the first interview between us, the first time of his entering my tent. Different from the physicians of Europe, who must examine the tongue and feel the pulse, he was satisfied with enquiring after my state, and prescribing for me on the report of another—a method which with him success in this instance had proved to be sufficient.

He was a little man, not differing in external appearance from the rest of his comrades ; and with regard to the mode of treating my disorder, he knew no more than they all knew. Accordingly, regardless of the honour of having performed a cure and obtained the



the confidence of a white man, he seemed sensible only of the pleasure of having restored me to health.

During the whole time of my illness, my people had all strove to pay me the greatest respect and attention. From the moment they began to be alarmed for me, they had all abstained from singing or dancing. I had not even heard so much as a laugh. The same attention continued during my convalescence, without my finding it necessary to issue a single order on the subject: and these fruits of the friendship they bore me were so many delicious enjoyments to my heart.

My store of provision being greatly diminished, and, in my present condition, none of what remained being fit for my use, I felt how much I was indebted to Swanepoel for setting my hen during my four months absence from him, and thus procuring me chickens. These served to make me broth, or to roast; and, when they were gone, my hunters took upon them to supply me with partridges and other birds of a similar kind.

As soon as I was able to rise, I made a point of quitting my tent, and taking a walk, or  
some

some gentle exercise, to recover my strength, I had desired already to see my physician; my first excursion was to gather and examine with him the plant he had employed in my cure.

Nothing in the country is more common: it is to be met with every where; and he showed it to me all round my camp. It is a species of sage, growing about two feet high, and nearly of the colour of our common sage, but with a smoother leaf. I could not be certain of the colour of the flower, because it was the season when it begins to wither and dry; but I believe it to be blue.

Swanepoel, when he saw the plant, conceived it to be perfectly familiar to him. He assured me it was equally common in the colony and at the Cape, where it was known by the Dutch name of *saaly* (sage). But botanists have comprised so many different plants under the general name of sage, that I know not to what family the *saaly* of the Cape belongs.

As the planters never employ it in sore throats, which are one of the scourges of their climate, it is probable they are unacquainted with its virtues: or it is more likely that Swanepoel, misled by some external resemblance

blance

blance in the two plants, was deceived, and that the *saaly* of the Nimiquas and that of the planters are not the same.

On the other hand, I am induced to believe that the latter differs from the common sage of Europe both in taste and in smell; and my reason is this: Among the nations of Europe that trade to China, there is one in particular, that, purchasing there a large quantity of tea, gives in exchange for it the leaves of sage. This plant, in consequence of the value placed by the people of every country on what is brought from a great distance, is sought by the Chinese with still more avidity than even theirs by certain inhabitants of Europe; and this is accordingly a trade in which cent per cent may easily be gained.

Now this sage, sold at so high a price at the farther extremity of Asia, is purchased in our southern provinces, though the French, to their shame be it spoken, are ignorant of the circumstance. The immense profit made by this trade is well known at the Cape, where *saaly* is in great abundance: whence I conclude, that if this *saaly* had the qualities of the French sage, the nation I have alluded to  
would

would export it in preference to China, since it would gain thereby still greater profit.

Be this, however, as it may, the plant that cured me of my quinsy is equally efficacious in the cure of wounds; at least so my Esculapius assured me. But he added, that, to promote digestion in the wound, and bring it into a healing state, a certain quality of some kind of fat must be added to the cataplasin, in order to give it a degree of unctuousness, without which it would be of no avail.

Is it not inconceivably strange, that, among the countless multitude of plants which cover the surface of the globe, so small a number should be known? And that in the most complete and amply furnished botanic garden scarcely three hundred and fifty are to be found, that afford food or medicine, either to man, or the animals he has domesticated? But what ought still more to astonish us is, that among this small number, if there be any of real importance to us, we have been almost always indebted to savages, or even to the beasts, for their discovery.

My disorder and convalescence had continued twenty days. During this time, my people,  
having



having never gone out of sight of my tent, and consequently having killed no game, had been reduced to live on my sheep. One only was left of my whole flock; so that I found myself under the necessity of procuring a new stock.

Fortunately, two or three leagues from my camp, and also near the river Kauffi, was a horde that I had visited the year before, capable of furnishing me with the sheep I wanted. Being perfectly recovered, I could easily reach it in a few hours; and accordingly I repaired thither, after having rewarded, to the utmost of my power, the Nimiqua to whom I was indebted for my life.

The chief came to meet me. On his breast hung a gorget, and under his kross he had a brass-headed cane, the end of which only was visible. By these badges of slavery and authority, which announced a Hottentot captain installed by the Government, I visibly perceived that I was entering the colony: but, by the humble and submissive air of the man, I saw still more clearly, that he was a being accustomed to cringe and obey. The tone of supplication he assumed on accosting me led me to suppose

at once, that he came to complain either of his subjects or of his neighbours. I was mistaken in one point only. He complained of both.

The planters against whom he brought accusations were Van der Westhuyfen, the father of Klaas Baster, with whom I had lodged on my journey, and Engelbrecht, his brother-in-law. The cattle-keepers of the horde had negligently suffered some of their beasts to escape; and these beasts having rambled into the territories of Van der Westhuyfen, he and his daughter, of whom I have spoken elsewhere, had shot at and killed them.

In this violent and unjust proceeding, I perfectly recognised the spirit of the planters: though, in this instance, it must be confessed, the keepers had been guilty of the first fault. Naseep, which was the name of the imbecile chief, taking upon himself to reprove the keepers, they had snatched from him, in their rage, his staff of authority, and, severely beating him, had broken it about his shoulders. Such is the respect which the hordes under the dominion of the Dutch government pay to the captains that are appointed to rule over them.

Poor

Poor Naseep drew from beneath his kross the cane that had been given him for another purpose, and I found that half of it only was left.

A moment after, the people of the horde came in their turn to complain of him. He then accused them all without exception; and a terrible uproar instantly began. Amidst this confusion of charges, it was impossible to understand a word that was said. All I could infer was, that every body was to blame. But what was I to do? I was no longer in a free country; and wherever a sovereign authority subsists, its laws, good or bad, ought to be respected. Complaints were addressed to me on all hands; yet, in my situation, I could listen to them only, in order to report them to the government. In vain did they testify their respect for me; having nothing but advice to give, what fruits could I expect from my interference?

If it be true, that the happiness of a people tends to render them more mild and social in their manners, it is equally true, that oppression must sour the temper, and from human beings change them into beasts. The discord and enmity that prevailed among these unhappy savages

ges appeared to me perfectly excusable. Persecuted by the neighbouring planters, who, having fire-arms, made an ill use of them against the natives ; wretched, and plundered besides ; how could they avoid being irritated by such multiplied insults and acts of injustice ? In their rage they laid the blame upon their chief, who was innocent ; quarrelled among themselves ; and became so many madmen towards each other.

The people of the horde did not merely complain of their cattle having been killed or stolen ; they had been robbed also of part of their territory by force. The vast domain occupied by Van der Westhuyfen and his family, as well as that on which his brother-in-law Engelbrecht had settled, were usurped property from which these planters had driven away the horde ; and, not yet satisfied, they were daily endeavouring to seize on what remained, particularly the Fountain of Lilies, near which was their kraal.

With this view, they harassed and tormented them incessantly : hoping that, by dint of persecution, they should weary them out, and so compel them to remove and settle



tle in some other place. Thus, after a thousand vexations, and after losing part of their cattle, these poor savages saw themselves on the point of being driven from the land in which they had been born, and reduced to seek a distant asylum, where they might remain unknown to the whites, whom they had so many reasons to execrate.

My heart bled at the relation of such atrocities: but still what could I do? The horde requested me to wait upon the two usurping families, and talk to them upon the subject. This I readily promised; though I was certain beforehand it would answer no purpose.

And here it will probably be asked, Why did not Naseep address himself directly to the Government, to obtain justice and restitution? I put to him the very same question: and the answer he gave was such as I expected, and which proved, that, if Administration have promulgated laws in favour of the savages, it has not yet taken the necessary means to ensure their execution.

Supposing the people of a horde desirous of making a complaint, and not deterred by the

distance and the difficulty of a long journey, what hope could they have, on their arrival at the Capè, of their charges reaching a Government surrounded entirely with whites, almost all of whom, living on abuses and interested in deceiving it, would intercept the truth in its way, or transmit it completely changed and disfigured?

Besides, from another kind of oppression still more odious, it is almost impossible for the unhappy suppliants to reach the town. The planters, having all a common interest, support one another. Whatever injustice one of them may have committed, he is sure of being abetted by the rest. The deputies from the horde, sent to complain of him, would be obstructed at every step. They would be pursued from plantation to plantation; snares would be laid for them; and, if they did not return, they would run the hazard of being totally exterminated.

This Naseep and his people had actually experienced, when they went to demand justice against Van der Westhuysen on his first usurpation. Could I hope then, after this fatal trial, they would venture to go with a second com-

plaint ; or that the two families, emboldened by the success of their iniquity, would desist in consequence of my remonstrances ?

Under these circumstances, I could do nothing but endeavour to console the horde : that is, exhort it to take patience, and repeat all those common-place topics of prudence and resignation, of which he who hears them thinks as little as the person by whom they are uttered.

To insert in my travels the principal particulars of this affair, I conceive to be my duty ; and my reasons for doing so will doubtless be respected. My second journey will reach Holland, as my first has done. Like the first, it will probably be read by some of the directors of the company ; and perhaps measures will be taken to remove abuses with which they were before unacquainted, and which most assuredly they have no desire to countenance.

When I arrived at Amsterdam, on my return to Europe, happening to mention to one of them that small money was wanting at the Cape, and that the internal trade of the colony was injured by this want, the directory ordered, in consequence, a coinage, as I have said elsewhere, of different small silver pieces,

to the amount of two or three hundred thousand livres ; and so speedily was the business executed, that the money was actually sent away before I even knew that it was in the mint. And I have no doubt, when informed of the species of injustice I have just unfolded, they will be eager to repair and prevent it by sage and wholesome laws, and will commend the disinterested zeal of a traveller, who, while he publishes good actions without flattery, ventures at the same time to denounce bad ones without malice.

Notwithstanding the losses of the horde, it still possessed a considerable number of cattle. Nasceep entreated me even to accept, as a present, two oxen, four sheep, and a fat cow. The oxen I refused ; but I received the cow and sheep, intending them for our evening repast. My desire was to make a feast, flattering myself that mirth would soften down asperities, and dispel the animosity that prevailed among the horde.

I was not mistaken. Scarcely were the animals slaughtered when the dances commenced. They continued the whole night, and the quarrels of the day were buried in



oblivion. The next morning, a general reconciliation took place, in which even Naseep was included. It is true, he had himself made some advances : among the presents I made him was a roll of tobacco, which, the moment he received it, he distributed in equal portions among his people ; and this unexpected liberality had gained him every heart.

Before I departed, I purchased what sheep I wanted ; and then, to acquit myself of the promise I had made of speaking to the two usurping families, I repaired to Engelbrecht's.

He appeared to see me again with pleasure, and received me with the utmost civility : but, before I returned his complaisance, I thought it right to inform him of the motive of my visit, and acquaint him how much I was interested in behalf of the savages. He exculpated himself, by observing to me, that it was not him they accused of having killed their oxen, but Van der Westhuyfen and his family ; and as to the domain he possessed, if it were usurped, he was in this respect also equally blameless, since he had it of his brother-in-law, by whom it had been ceded to him.

After such excuses, I saw that no satisfaction

or reconciliation was to be expected. Of course I did not think it necessary to make any stay with him ; and I continued my journey. But, when my waggon set off, he perceived what wretched objects were my two thill oxen, and he offered me my choice of two others out of all he had, if I would give him in exchange one of my horses.

My oxen, it is true, were good for nothing, and had been on the point a hundred times of overturning my waggon and breaking it to pieces. Yet the bargain proposed was greatly to my disadvantage : for though I no longer wanted both my horses, as I should soon reach the Cape, either of them was of much more worth than any two oxen. They were very lean, indeed, owing to the great fatigue of the journey ; but no other fault could be found with them, for they were in perfect health, sound in their feet, and had their hoofs too in good condition.

This expression, of the hoofs being in good condition, will surprise the greater part of my readers, and requires an explanation.

It must be known then, that horses are never shod either at the Cape or in any part of the colony.

colony. Their hoofs are so hard, that, whatever road they travel, they are always bare. Thus, though the country is not without farriers, their only employment is to cure horses that are sick or hurt, or to fit them for carriages.

Is this property in the hoof, of being absolutely indestructible, owing to the food of the animal? I think not. Horses are fed at the Cape, as in certain countries of Europe, on barley, straw, or green forage: the only difference is, they eat no oats; for oats do not thrive in Africa, and therefore are not cultivated.

Does it depend on the climate? Or is it common to the Arabian horses, from which those of the Cape are descended? I dare not answer either of these questions in the affirmative. But this at least I can assert, that mine, after travelling fifteen months, over rocks and flints, in execrable roads, and after violent hunts, returned with their hoofs as sound and whole as the day they quitted the Cape.

My want of thill oxen, however, made me consent to the bargain; and with these I took the way to the residence of Van der West-

huyfen; though I expected with this old man, governed as he was by his wife, no better success than I had found with his brother-in-law. His house was at the distance only of two leagues and a half; but I had scarcely advanced four hundred paces, when, going down a descent, one of my new oxen, overpowered by the weight of the waggon, fell down.

I had no reason to be surprised at this accident: it had many times happened, and was what every person must expect who travels in countries where there are no roads. On these occasions it is usual for the drivers to stop the fore-wheel, to prevent the animal from being crushed by it: but here they had not time; accordingly it went over the ox, and broke his thigh.

This misfortune being without remedy, I ordered the animal to be unyoked, and, leaving him on the spot, had one of my old ones substituted in his place. The other, however, missing his comrade, and seeing a stranger at his side, refused to draw with him. All possible means were tried to overcome his repugnance, but to no purpose. After considerable trouble and much loss of time, we were forced to



to unyoke him also, and proceed as before with my two old oxen.

I had thus from my barter, one useless ox the more, and a horse the less.

The Hottentot cattle-dealers who accompanied me were the only people who had reason to rejoice at the adventure. The forsaken ox was to them a very good windfall: Accordingly they remained behind to cut him up, and perhaps in their hearts they would not have been sorry if I had oftener supplied their table in a similar manner.

I was arrived within an hour's march of my journey's end when I perceived, in a valley, a Hottentot hut, standing by itself, and a herd feeding near it. On approaching the hut, I found to my surprise a tall and handsome damsel. I had seen and have spoken of her before: it was the daughter of Van der Westhuyzen; that daughter who, for several days together, had held out with the stoutest of the drinkers, carousing upon the brandy of Pinar as heroically as the best of them.

Indefatigable in the chase, she could hunt down on horseback the largest antelope. If the Boshmen appeared, she would take her  
gun,

gun, pursue them without fear, and fire at them wherever she found them. If she conceived herself aggrieved by any neighbouring horde, she would treat it like the Boshmen. Accordingly, she was dreaded by all the savages around.

At present this undaunted heroine lived in the solitary hut in the valley, where she kept the flocks and herds of her father, having no other furniture than a mat and her gun. I readily knew her, but was not so easily recognized in my turn, as my beard, since last we met, had acquired fourteen months growth.

After spending a few minutes in her hut, I left her, and proceeded to her father's, where I was received with every demonstration of friendship. Seeing by my pale and languid countenance that I had been ill, they civilly invited me to spend some time with them. I accepted the invitation with the more pleasure, as, since my illness, I had confined myself to a milk diet, and the udders of most of my cows being dried up, I had lately had but a scanty supply.

I now saw bread again for the first time. A year had elapsed since I tasted any, which was during my former residence with the same family.

family. What was now given me I dipped with delight in my beverage of milk, as fresh as it was pure; and this simple and frugal meal was more exquisite to my taste than the richest viands.

Klaas Baster was well received by his family, and even by his step-mother; and the reception afforded him the greater pleasure, as it gave him reason to hope, that the reconciliation I had effected for him would continue after my departure, and probably be lasting.

Advanced thus far on my return, every thing co-operated to efface the remembrance of my fatigues, and the obstacles that had so often thwarted my designs. The fields, formerly so barren and lifeless, were covered with verdure and enamelled with flowers. My eyes feasted with rapture on the fruitful and re-vivified land. Perfectly secure about my cattle, whatever road I might choose, I resolved to change my former one, and return to the Cape by a different way from that I had come.

Beside the pleasure of seeing and traversing a new country, I had also the hope of finding something to add to my collections.

I turned off, therefore, to the south-west;  
and

and after travelling fourteen leagues, which was the business of three days, I arrived at the *Groene-Rivier* (Green-River). But how much did I still deceive myself by the dreams of my imagination !

The first object I noticed on my arrival was the dung of an elephant, yet warm. This indicated that some of these animals were near. I took Swanepoel with me, and, without losing time, set off to trace them, while my camp was erecting. To see me depart attended only by a single man, it seemed as if I were going to kill a hare or a rabbit. Formerly I should not in this manner have ventured at such sport ; but insensibly we become hardy, so that the greatest dangers appear no more than common occurrences.

We had not proceeded three hundred paces before we perceived five elephants standing in the midst of the trees that skirted the river. Each of us singled out his object, each brought down his beast, and the other three fled. At the report my hunters hastened to us ; and when arrived, my old Swanepoel, hitherto considered by them as an honest fellow, fit only to take care of my chickens, tauntingly pointed



pointed at the elephant he had killed, and asked if they could mend the shot.

The animals were both males, and nearly of the same height and bulk, measuring about ten feet each [ten feet eight inches English]. This is the usual size of elephants in Africa, where it is very rare to meet with any that reach to eleven or twelve feet. They were, however, not of the same age, and consequently their tusks were very unequal; those of one weighing seventy or eighty pounds, while those of the other did not exceed five-and-thirty or forty.

What convinced me still more of the difference of their ages was, that the heavier tusks were nearly solid throughout, while the others were hollow two-thirds of their length: the elder, too, had his grinding teeth much worn, while the grinding teeth of the other were in good preservation and entire. The ivory of old elephants, being more compact and heavy, is more valuable and fetches a higher price: from its density it takes also a finer polish, appears whiter, and is less liable to grow yellow.

The Green-River was covered with aquatic fowls

fowls of all kinds, particularly pelicans, flamingoes, and wild geese. I also met with the night-heron, the crested purple heron, the common heron, and the black stork, all exactly similar to those of Europe.

The dead elephants procured me several birds of prey. I constructed within shot of their carcases a little arbour, in which I concealed myself to lie in wait for such birds as should come to feed on them. From morning till night they alighted by hundreds, and I killed such as appeared to me to deserve the preference.

During my residence at Green-River, I changed my encampment several times, and thus travelled over a space of eight or ten leagues on its banks. At length I quitted them, and gained those of the *Swarte-Doorn* (Black-Thorn), at the very place where I met Pinar for the first time. I spent the night there, and the next day bent my course towards the mountains to the south. The road was terrible for my waggons. After a laborious march of six hours, we arrived at the foot of a chain of arid mountains, the bare and rusty rocks of which, picturesquely  
heaped

heaped on one another, exhibited a singular and fantastic spectacle; but none could be better calculated for a retreat to the Boshmen. On seeing them, I whispered to myself that I ought to be on my guard: yet, notwithstanding my mistrust, I was taken unawares.

My people were busy in pitching my camp. I in the mean time having perceived some wood-peckers of a scarce species, which I have named the rock wood-pecker, followed them, and found myself insensibly on one of the cliffs, from which I overlooked my camp.

Suddenly I heard three discharges of my large carbine as signals of alarm. Looking about me, I saw, on the one hand, my people running in disorder, and, on the other, a party of Boshmen, who had seized my oxen, and were driving them into a defile, where they would soon be out of sight.

I descended the mountains with precipitancy, and, when I arrived at its foot, I found Klaas galloping to inform me of my misfortune. He gave me his horse. I mounted it, and rode full speed toward the defile; but I had scarcely advanced fifty paces, when my horse stumbled in a porcupine's hole, and  
threw

threw me on my side. My fall was so severe, that, when I rose, I could not use my left arm, and I imagined my shoulder to be dislocated. Klaas came to me : I ordered him to remount the horse, while I returned to the camp on foot, unable to take any part in this adventure, and leaving my people to terminate it in the best way they could. It was night before they returned, when I learned, with sorrow, that two of the Boshmen had been killed. All my oxen, however, were brought back except three ; and these were not missed till we were about to depart the next day.

That the robbers might not make another attempt, I departed at day-break ; and by a march of six or seven hours, in the same direction as the day before, I arrived at a place where I was met by some Hottentots of the horde of Klaas Baster, who knew me. They informed us, that his horde had quitted the mountains of Namero, and had settled five leagues from the spot where I was.

Baster being still with me, I conceived myself bound in gratitude, after the important services I had received at his hands, to restore him, in person, to the arms of his wife,  
his



his children, and his friends. I repaired, therefore, to the horde. His return occasioned inexpressible joy; which was so much the greater, as they supposed us to be dead, and had despaired of ever seeing us more. It was in consequence of this persuasion, that they had thought proper to remove and settle in another place.

The people of the horde told me another piece of news, which gave me still greater pleasure than the former: it was, that the worthy Schoenmaker had also quitted the mountains, and established his camp in the neighbourhood. Eager to see this honest being, for whom I had so great an esteem, and to whom I owed so many obligations, I instantly paid him a visit, and embraced him with the tenderest affection.

The services which he had exerted himself to render me were alive in my memory and my heart, and I wanted no new motive to interest me in his behalf. But I confess I could not behold him surrounded with his wives and children, like a good father and kind husband, without feeling myself still more inclined to serve him to the utmost of my power.

I acquainted him with the design I had

formed of soliciting his pardon, and of obtaining from the Government leave for him to return to the colony. He thanked me with emotion for the kindness of my intentions: but, though he had great confidence in the friendship with which Colonel Gordon honoured him, and still greater in the zeal I displayed for his welfare, he had little hope of my success; no instance, he said, of such pardon having ever been known.

I encouraged him as much as I could, by assuring him of the warmth with which I would solicit the favour. Indeed, that with which he inspired me at the moment was so great, that, not doubting of success, I protested he should soon hear from me, and requested him to be in readiness to set off at the earliest notice.

He listened to my consolatory promises with tears. But the fear of their failure was predominant; and his imagination, so long tortured with continual anxiety, depicted to him a thousand chimeras, which he dared not combat himself, and which I had great difficulty to destroy.

To dissipate these gloomy ideas, and revive his spirits, I turned his mind to another object. I spoke to him of his little hermitage near the Orange, related my adventure with  
the

the travellers I had met, and told him how I had taken upon myself to dispose of the place, and bestow it on an unfortunate family ; not doubting, from the testimonies he had given me of his friendship, but he would confirm a gift made without his consent.—As I had supposed, he approved it without the smallest hesitation.

“ When I arrived in these deserts,” said he, “ I was without shelter, and without resource, “ like those on whom you have bestowed your “ protection. My own misfortunes have rendered me sensible to those of others. I congratulate myself on the good use you have made “ of my little estate. May it prove the asylum “ you wish, and long preserve the remembrance of its founder, and of him who has “ thus consecrated it by an act of benevolence!”

Klaas Baster had accompanied me to Schoenmaker's. Seeing me ready to resume my journey towards the Cape, he requested my permission to return to his family ; and to this I the more willingly consented, as thenceforward he could be of no service to me. Before we parted, I made him a present of some powder and shot, some beads for his wife and children, and two of my dogs, of which he had become particularly fond during our journey.

As there was no route more commodious for my waggons than that of the Elephants-River, I sent them and the greater part of my caravan before me, with directions to take the same road as we had come, and to wait for me on its banks. Purposing to traverse the country, and reach the river by a different way, I took with me six of my Hottentots and a few dogs, and entered among the mountains.

We carried nothing with us but powder and shot, resolving to sleep in the open air, and to live on the fruits of the chase.

The first night, we took up our abode on the ridge of the mountains where had formerly been situated one of the kraals of Klaas Baster. We here suffered extremely from the cold. Long accustomed as we had been to the heat of the plain, the cool temperature of these heights had the greater effect upon us; and the worst of our situation was, we could procure no wood to make a fire. Fortunately, however, cattle having a long time been kept in the spot, we found an abundance of their dried dung; and the gentle warmth afforded by this sort of fuel mitigated the rigour of the cold.

Another misfortune was, that, carrying no



provision, we had nothing to eat; and game in these mountains was extremely scarce. In three days we had been able to kill only a single kainsi antelope, which was a poor supply for seven persons. At length our necessity was so great, that, on the afternoon of the third day, being totally destitute of food, it was resolved that each of us should take his own course, and hunt for himself.

Klaas, from his attachment to me, would not leave me. We killed three wood-peckers and six larks. My hunters might have done still better, by shooting at damans; but, greedy of larger game, they neglected these to seek for other antelopes. They all returned empty handed, and were of course, from their preceding fast and the violent exercise they had taken, doubly hungry.

I much regretted that I could not share with them the produce of my chase. But, as it was scarcely sufficient for Klaas and myself, how could it have been shared with five others?

On this occasion I was witness to the effects which the terrible want called hunger is capable of producing. I have heard a cele-

brated naturalist, Romé de Lisle, whose recent loss we cannot but lament, say that, during the siege of Pondicherry in 1761, he had been reduced to such extremity, that he deemed it a happiness to purchase, for their weight in gold, an old pair of leather breeches, which, out of humanity, he shared with three officers, his friends. Nothing was left for my Hottentots but the skin of our antelope. Accordingly, having no other food, they seized upon this; and, without any preparation, broiled it as it was with the hair on, and devoured the whole of it.

The burning of the hair diffused a noisome smell round the fire, which turned me sick. My hungry people themselves appeared disgusted at it: yet I saw them tear the nauseous leather to pieces with their hands and teeth. In different circumstances, the distorted features with which their repugnance accompanied these efforts would probably have excited my laughter; in the present, they pierced my heart, and gave me an idea of the fearful extremities to which men may be driven by famine.

Our situation made me regret that I had  
quitted

quitted my caravan: for, if obliged to fire at small birds for food, as we had hitherto done, we should soon exhaust our ammunition, and thereby be reduced to the utmost perplexity. Happily, however, getting farther to the east, we perceived, in the plain on the other side of the mountains, several plantations belonging to the colonists. This sight gladdened my skin-eaters. We descended the mountains, and repaired to the highest plantation, where we did not arrive till it was dusk. As soon as we were perceived, we were taken for Boshmen or thieves coming to attack and pillage the house; the dogs were turned loose upon us; and it was well we were not welcomed with a few shot. Fortunately they were stopped and repulsed by my pack; and the master himself, running out at the noise, and perceiving me to be an European, called back his people and his dogs, and came to meet me. He had heard of my expedition; and, when I told him my name, he made an apology, and pressed me to enter his habitation. I mentioned our distress, and requested some food for my people. He generously complied, and gave us, indeed, so friendly a

reception,

reception, that I spent the night under his roof.

At my departure I was desirous of recompensing his kindness: but, not contented with refusing every token of acknowledgement, he would give my people a loaf and a quarter of mutton, to serve them on their journey; and as for myself, observing that I ate scarcely any thing but butter, he ordered some fresh to be made, and insisted on my accepting a pot of it.

I returned to the mountains, because, being able from their summits to discover the Elephants-River, at which my caravan ought by this time to have arrived, I should the better know how to direct my course. Our march continued still three days longer, without affording any thing to interest me, but a night spent near a beautiful spring that abounded with the shrub on which grows the fruit called in that country *welf's-gift* (wolf's poison).

This name is derived from the property possessed by the fruit, when roasted, of poisoning any carnivorous animals that may eat of it. It is prepared like coffee, ground in the same manner, and the powder is then  
strewed



strewed over pieces of flesh, which are laid for these animals in the night. The bait is intended chiefly for the jackal and hyena. As soon as it is swallowed, the animal swells prodigiously, and dies more or less speedily according to the quantity he has taken. At length we perceived some large trees, which, by their winding position, appeared to skirt some river. Not doubting but it was the Elephants-River, we descended the mountains to reach its banks. The river, indeed, it was; but we had roamed so much farther than we were aware, that, returning upon our steps, or rather proceeding down the stream, it was not till after two encampments that we reached the place of rendezvous, the house of Van Zeyl; where, when we arrived, all my people and waggons I found had been waiting for me three days.

My caravan was considerably diminished. The Hottentot cattle-dealers, after having passed the river, had repaired to their respective hordes, leaving only two of their party in the camp, to wait for me, and receive in money or in kind the value of the tobacco they had sold me at the Orange.

I wished

I wished to return it them in kind, to save them the trouble of going to the colony to purchase more ; but, to do this, I must buy it myself. Van Zeyl had none ; but at another planter's near, he informed me I might procure some. Accordingly I went thither on horseback, and purchased the quantity I wanted, at the exorbitant price of a Dutch scalin (sixpence) a pound. Thus having discharged my debt to my travelling companions, I repaired to *Heere-logement*, that grotto so naturally carpeted by the foliage of a large tree, and which I have already described.

Every thing was green in this district, as in those I had lately traversed, and consequently very different from what it was at my former visit. But the neighbouring planters, by way of husbanding the pasture on their own estates, had driven their herds hither ; and these herds were so numerous, that the herbage was almost all eaten up. The keepers of the cattle even assured me, that, if I pursued the ordinary route to the Cape, I should every where experience the same inconvenience ; and they advised me to travel more to the south-west, through *Verloore-Valey* (lost-lake), where, the

I

pastu-

pasturage having suffered less in this way, I should necessarily find a better supply.

Impatient as I was to reach the Cape, this circuit, which would cost me several days march, was extremely against my will: but necessity compelled me to submit to it. In two days I arrived in *Verloore-Valey*, which I found to be an extensive lake, separated from the sea by a narrow border of sandy downs.

The lake and its banks being covered with birds of every kind, I flattered myself I should find some for my collection that would recompense me for the length of the road. In fact, I saw there not only all the birds that I had met with on Green-River, but also the coot of Europe, different species of grebes, particularly that called by naturalists the horned grebe, and a particular species of penguin.

This bird has a crest of long narrow feathers covering its eyes and the sides of its head, and this crest it can erect and lower at will. The same species is found about the straits of Magellan, where it was seen by the celebrated Bougainville, who gave it the name of hopping penguin. Buffon gives a short description of it under the same name, and afterwards  
figures

figures it in his *Planches Enluménées*, under that of the crested penguin of Siberia.

In the same lake I found a great number of penguins of another species, the same as I spoke of having seen in Saldanha bay. These penguins have on their bodies an abundance of fat; and I have no doubt but the neighbouring planters might make of this fat a lucrative article of trade, if they would employ themselves in taking these birds. The profit would be the more certain, as the birds in question are extremely plenty on the western coast, and so tame that they will suffer themselves to be knocked on the head without stirring, and even to be taken by the hand. This shows that, with a little care and address, means might be found of obtaining them at so small an expence, that powder and shot might be spared, and the business be almost entirely clear gain.

My visit to *Verloore-Valey* procured me great number of aquatic birds of different species, and among them the purple gallinule, which is very abundant there, and excellent food. In short, the lake swarms with all the water-fowls that may be found dispersed here and there over the rest of this part of the world.



world. It is the only place for an ornithologist to fix his residence, who would wish in a short time to procure a complete collection of the web-footed and shore birds of Africa. I there obtained also a beautiful species of small crested falcon, that feeds only on crabs and fish, which it catches in the same way as the osprey, the bald-buzzard and the kite. I spent eleven days on the borders of this lake, and collected a hundred and thirty-two specimens of birds, large and small. At length my hunters brought me more birds every day than I could tell how to dispose of, and I had not the pleasure of killing a single one myself, so fully was I employed in preparing them.

Finding myself so near St. Helen's Bay, I resolved to visit it. In consequence, I ordered my people to proceed with my waggon to Swart-Land, and wait for me at the house of my friend Slaber. Swanepoel was entrusted with the care of conducting them thither, and, having done this, was to proceed on without delay to the Cape, to give my friends notice of my return, and inquire whether any letter had arrived for me during my fifteen months absence. The interval I was to spend  
at

at St. Helen's : I had never yet been there ; and I should not have forgiven myself, if, now that I was so near, I neglected to see it.

For this excursion I took with me only the same hunters as had attended me in my last. When I arrived at the bay, I traversed all its windings from one point to the other. Kolben, who was no better geographer than he was a naturalist, and who had seen no more of St. Helen's Bay than he had of the colony, says that *Berg-Rivier* disembogues itself to the north of the bay ; and it is thus he lays it down in his map. Kolben is mistaken in this point, as he is in a thousand others. The mouth of the Berg is in the southern part of St. Helen's. The Bay itself too is improperly placed in all our sea charts, its latitude being wrong by more than fifteen minutes.

This river, which I ascended for a considerable way, is obstructed by forests of reeds, into which the hippopotamuses retire and conceal themselves. Government, fearing that these amphibious animals, the species of which it wishes to preserve, might be totally destroyed, has prohibited hunting them, under penalty of a fine. This regulation would spare  
the

the fate of many others, and in all probability be no better observed, if local difficulties did not ensure its execution. But the impossibility of penetrating these forests of reeds discourages the hunters, and secures the breed of hippopotamuses more effectually than laws, which in general are seldom regarded, and the rigour of which, at the expence of twenty or thirty rixdollars, may with certainty be averted.

After having visited the Bay of St. Helen's, I proceeded along the sea shore to that of Saldanha. Both abounded alike with spermaceti whales. In the single cove called *Hoetjes-Bay*, I counted two-and-thirty playing together. It is perfectly astonishing that the governors of the Cape have never thought of this branch of commerce, which unquestionably would be very lucrative; but it would be necessary to leave it entirely to the colonists, merely reserving certain duties on the fishery for the company. It is to be hoped, that the Dutch government will some day perceive the necessity of attending seriously to the affairs of this interesting settlement. They have only to leave the inhabitants

habitants at liberty to pursue their own schemes without fettering their industry, and this part of Africa would become the most flourishing on the face of the globe.

Upon quitting Saldanha, I proceeded towards the habitation of my venerable friend Slaber. His worthy, his amiable family, apprised of my return from my expedition by the people with my waggons, and informed of my arrival by one of my hunters whom I sent on before, came to meet me. I was surprised not to see my good friend himself with his children. They informed me, that since my departure he had been seized with a severe dysentery, and was at the point of death. He had been often anxious about me during my absence, and had made respecting me every possible enquiry. He had wished to embrace me once more before he died; and when he saw Swanepoel and Klaas return without me, he was alarmed. But they had removed his fears by accounting for my delay; and he expected me with impatience.

They added, that he was so extremely emaciated and so much altered, that I should scarcely know him: and, as they were apprehensive  
his



his situation would make upon me at first sight so strong an impression that I should be unable to conceal my feelings, they besought me to restrain my surprise, and not alarm him to no purpose.

I entered his chamber, affecting a degree of joy which was certainly far from my heart. I even professed to consider his disease as a slight malady ; and, after just mentioning the subject without waiting for his reply, I turned the conversation to the fine bull I had procured for him on my journey, and which my people had no doubt already presented to him.

His sufferings, however, had so much weaned him from earth and all its concerns, that he appeared to pay little attention to my present, and spoke only of his approaching dissolution. At the Cape the dysentery is to people of all ages and constitutions a dangerous disease ; but to those advanced in life it is always fatal ; and I perceived too clearly that my best friend was dying.

Swanepoel, on his return from the Cape, brought me news of my friends, and letters from Europe. Among others was one from my respected friend Boers, which informed me

of his arrival in Holland, after an agreeable passage. Not satisfied with the services he had rendered me during his abode at the Cape, he informed me, that he had commended me anew to all his friends, particularly to the new fiscal Serrurier, whose zeal and friendship towards me while I remained in Africa never abated for an instant. All my acquaintances invited me to hasten to the town; and Colonel Gordon and his lady wrote to me to that purpose, in the most friendly manner, insisting that I should take up my abode at their house.

Among my letters were several also from my family and friends in France; and one in particular from Amsterdam, which overturned all my projects, all the arrangements that I had already actually formed in my head for a third journey into the deserts. It was from Temminck, who informed me, that one of the company's ships, engaged in the slave trade, would soon sail from Holland for the island of Madagascar. This vessel was to touch at the Cape to victual and water, so that I might easily introduce myself to the Captain, and embark with him for the place of his destination.

Knowing, however, my inclination for travelling, and supposing that I should gladly avail myself of such an opportunity to visit that celebrated island, the largest in the known world; my friend had made every arrangement with the Captain; and of these arrangements he gave me notice in his letter.

I was highly gratified by this obliging readiness to serve me, which was as congenial to my inclination as it was prudently managed. It is true, this new scheme did not accord with my other: but then, besides that it afforded me an opportunity of visiting a land I had never seen—besides that I should have sufficient time completely to traverse it, as the ship must necessarily make some stay at the island to accomplish the purpose of her voyage, I might resume my former plan on my return to the Cape. For the present, therefore, I gave up my design of visiting again the interior part of Africa, and employed myself in preparing to sail for Madagascar: a preparation which would easily be effected, as my friend himself had smoothed every difficulty.

In this new arrangement I wanted neither waggons nor horses, nor teams of oxen, nor

indeed any of that apparatus and those attendants which had hitherto been necessary. My oxen, become useless to me, were the first things I sought to dispose of. Being extremely lean, and little calculated for the yoke in their present condition, I offered them to the company's butcher, who paid me at the rate of seven rix-dollars per head, or about thirty livres French money.

Two of my cows I gave to Klaas's wife, who had accompanied me on my journey, and had performed for me the office of a laundress, and sometimes of a cook; and two others to Swanepoel. Finally, I offered my goats to the daughters of Slaber: but they would only accept them conditionally, as deposits to be returned if, in consequence of taking a new journey, I should hereafter have occasion for them.

In this herd of goats were a he and she purchased by me in the Nimiqua country for my friend Liewenberg, of the canton of the Four-and-Twenty Rivers, and at his request. I had the pleasure of delivering them to him myself. I had not forgotten the bottles of lemon-juice, which this worthy planter had given me in  
my



my journey, the friendship he had so readily shewn me, and the two beautiful birds which had been procured me by his sons.

Though my present was trifling in itself, it was the more gratifying to him, as it was precisely what he had desired of me, and what in reality he most wished for. I afterwards divided amongst my honest Hottentots every thing for which I had no farther occasion.

Thus having gotten rid of all that was useless to me, I reckoned with my attendants, and appointed them to meet me at the Cape to be paid. Though they were all eager to return to their hordes to see their families, they did not quit me without expressing regret: nor was I on my part without emotion, though there were few of them against whom I had not some cause of complaint.

My new scheme called me to the Cape; and my attentions, however affectionate and sincere, could be of no use to a sick man, whose deplorable state left no hopes of his recovery. I embraced, therefore, for the last time this best of men, to whom I was under the greatest obligations, and whom I tenderly loved. He bade me also a last farewell; and some time after I

learned, that his respectable family had to lament his death.

At length, after an absence of sixteen months spent in the deserts of Africa, I arrived at the Cape, where Gordon and his lady were eagerly expecting me. I was welcomed as a friend, a brother, a son, or whatever is most dear; and the kindness of these beneficent hosts never slackened for a moment. The memory of my gratitude will continue as long as my travels shall continue to be read; nor can I permit myself to be withheld from the declaration of it by the apprehension, that that declaration may be construed in a way offensive to the self-love of others.

My first care, as soon as I was at liberty, was to enquire whether there were any vessel in the harbour bound for Europe. I found one ready to sail, by which I wrote to Temminck, thanking him for what he had done for me, and informing him, that I had resolved to accept his generous offer, and waited only for the arrival of the slave-ship which was to transport me to Madagascar. I sent advice to the same purpose to my family, and thought of nothing but my departure.

I had

I had not forgotten poor Schoenmaker. The very day after my arrival, I had endeavoured to interest Gordon in the fate of this unhappy deserter. The Colonel had considerable regard for him, and assured me of his inclination to serve him. In consequence I sent an express to the outlaw, telling him to repair immediately to the town. He came. We conducted him to the house of the Governor, and solicited his pardon; which was instantly granted. He left me to return to his deserts to settle his affairs, and then came to reside in the colony, where he soon gained the friendship of his neighbours, and married a daughter of one of them: a circumstance that seldom occurs in a country where soldiers and sailors are in general held in little estimation by the planters.

While I remained at the Cape, the slave-ship came into the road. I received by it other letters from Temminck, who again repeated all he had said before respecting my voyage to Madagascar, pressing me to undertake it, and having no doubt but the captain of the vessel, who was under the greatest obligations to him, would do every thing in his power for my

accommodation. But I very soon perceived that my friend had been mistaken with regard to this captain, whose conduct plainly showed me how little he wished that I should accompany him. / Unwilling to expose myself to the certain inconvenience of making such a voyage with a man who visibly regarded me with jealousy, fearing no doubt that I should prove an obstacle to his commercial projects, I gave up the idea for the moment; and, other cross circumstances continuing to procrastinate the scheme, I abandoned it entirely. All my thoughts were now centred in Europe, and I became wholly disgusted with travelling, till the time when, renouncing the society of my species, deceived by them, outraged in the purest sentiments of my heart, I was led once more to sigh for a desert, and was no longer able but in imagination to gratify my desire.

At last an opportunity of departing arrived. The ships of the Dutch East-India company were returning home. I solicited a passage, which was granted me. There were five vessels bound for Europe in the road, and the question was, in which I could embark with my effects. One of these vessels had brought  
from



from China an old supercargo of the company with his wife and children. I had now and then fallen in with these people in different companies at the Cape, and I rejoiced at the thought of having them to myself, and that too for a considerable time: for it is pleasing to enliven the tediousness of a long voyage by the charm of agreeable company, and to be able occasionally to contemplate a handsome face, when the sea, the sky, or sailors in their dirty dresses, are the objects, and the only objects, constantly before the eye. Such was to have been my lot: at least such I hoped it would have been. But probably the husband thought me too eager for a passenger; and accordingly, without a direct denial, he assured me I should be so badly accommodated, and he so positively refused to take my boxes on board with me, that I was obliged to give up the design. Being less a courtier than attached to my riches, I could by no means consent to be separated from them. They were therefore sent aboard another vessel, and the supercargo was freed from my importunities. By his refusal he gave me my life, while, poor man! he little thought of losing his own.

I em-

I embarked in the Ganges, commanded by Captain *Paardekooper*. We sailed from False-Bay the 14th of July, 1784, accompanied by four other of the company's ships. We had scarcely cleared the bay, when contrary winds drove us to the southward, where a horrible tempest assailed us, and we were driven by a violent gale to the latitude of  $37^{\circ}$  south. I felt by experience how much reason the Portuguese had to call the southernmost part of Africa the Cape of Tempests. On this fearful occasion we lost two men, whom the waves washed off the deck. Every effort was made to save them, but in vain: they were twenty times overwhelmed by mountains of water, and at last perished. Our vessel, which was old, greatly suffered: the water penetrated in all parts; and notwithstanding every thing that could afterwards be done to remedy the evil, she remained leaky during the whole voyage.

We were eleven days in this distressing situation; which, with the image of death every moment before our eyes, were a long and tedious period. On one of those nights of horror, several guns were fired as signals of distress by one of the vessels; and, to our grief,  
the

the next day the *Middelbourg*, the vessel into which I had been refused admision, was no longer to be seen. Certain that she had sunk, I addressed a short prayer to heaven for the supercargo's young wife, apprehensive every moment that I should myself be buried in the same grave. However, we had the happiness at last to double the Cape, so much dreaded by sailors. On the 10th of August we passed in sight of St. Helena, and on the 25th crossed the line in the longitude of  $358^{\circ}$ .

During the whole voyage, I never cast my eyes backward without seeing in imagination the unfortunate *Middelbourg*. What a dreadful moment, said I to myself, must it have been when the whole of that family were swallowed up by the waves! I fancied I heard the last shrieks of the unfortunate mother mingled with the dying screams of her poor children. Alas! that hour had not yet arrived, but awaited them when in sight of the port for which they were bound.

The four vessels sailed in company, without losing sight of each other; and we even visited one another, when the weather was calm, and we could hoist out our boats.

When

When this kind of intercourse was rendered impracticable by high winds and a too stormy sea, we had recourse to another, that of mutually writing letters, of which the gulls and terns were the carriers.

These birds, beaten by the winds and tired with their flight, would pitch upon our yards to rest themselves, where the sailors easily caught them. Having fastened our little epistles to their legs, we then let them fly, and, making a noise to prevent their alighting again on our vessel, obliged them to wing their course to the next. There they were caught again by the crew, and sent back to us in the same manner with answers to our letters. This curious stratagem has something kind and affectionate in it, which transports me to other regions; and it is one of the circumstances of my travels which I always recollect with additional pleasure.

In the latitude of  $10^{\circ} 15'$  north, and longitude  $355^{\circ}$ , we met with a calm that delayed us several days, and in the interval I witnessed a phenomenon, which, though known to the crew, was to me perfectly new.

An enormous flat fish, of the ray genus,  
came



came and swam round our vessel. It differed from the common ray, however, in the shape of its head, which, instead of being pointed, formed a crescent, and from the extremities of the semicircle issued two arms as it were, which the sailors called horns. They were two feet wide at the base, and only five inches at the extremity. This monster they told me was called the sea-devil.

A few hours after, we saw two others with this, one of which was so extremely large, that it was computed by the crew to be fifty or sixty feet wide. Each swam separately, and was surrounded by those small fish which usually precede the shark, and which are therefore called by seamen pilot-fish. Lastly, all three carried on each of their horns a white fish, about the size of a man's arm and half a yard long, which appeared to be stationed there on duty.

You would have said they were two sentinels placed to keep watch for the safety of the animal, to inform him of any approaching danger, and to guide his movements. If he approached too near the vessel, they quitted their posts, and, swimming briskly before, led him

him away. If he rose too high above the water, they passed backward and forward over his back, till he had descended deeper. If, on the contrary, he swam too low, they disappeared, and we saw no more of them, because, no doubt, they were passing underneath, as in the preceding instance they had passed above him. Accordingly we found him re-ascend towards the surface, and then the two sentinels reassumed their posts, each on his horn.

During the three days that the calm continued, and we remained motionless for want of wind, these manœuvres were many times repeated before our eyes as to each of the three monsters.

I was desirous of catching one of them, in order to examine it at leisure. But, when I proposed it to the crew, they treated it as impossible. However, on my promising a dozen bottles of wine to any one who should accomplish it, their ardour was roused; and the attempt, which was before deemed impracticable, was now only difficult.

They all ran to their harpoons, and posted themselves here and there by the ship's side in  
readiness

readiness to strike. A sailor standing near the bowsprit, more fortunate than the rest, struck one of the three fish on the back: then letting out his line, that he might have room to beat about and tire himself, he at last towed him gradually to the surface of the water. The animal lay perfectly motionless; and we made no doubt of easily drawing him upon deck. One harpoon, however, being insufficient to support him, particularly as it had penetrated but a little way, twelve or fifteen more were struck into him at once, so as to fix him completely: several halbers were passed round his body, and he was thus hoisted on board.

This was the least of the three, being only eight-and-twenty feet in its extreme breadth, and one-and-twenty in length from the extremity of the horns to that of the tail. The tail, which was thick in proportion to the body, was twenty-two inches long.

The mouth, placed exactly like that of the ray, was wide enough to swallow a man with ease. The skin was white under the belly, and brown on the back, like that of the ray.

We reckoned the animal to weigh not less, certainly, than a ton.

About

About twenty small sucking fish were fastened to different parts of his body so firmly, that they did not drop off when he was hoisted on board, but were taken with him.

Some naturalists have said, that the head of the sucking fish is viscous on the lower part, and furnished with rough points similar to the teeth of a file; and, according to them, it is by means of these two qualities, its roughness and viscosity, that it is enabled to adhere to other fish.

“Figure to yourself,” says one of them, “a row of nineteen sharp-edged and dentated laminae, placed crosswise, and issuing immediately from the rim of the lower jaw, and you will have a just idea of the part with which the remora makes itself fast.”

This description is exact as far as relates to the figure and number of the dentated laminae; but it places them on the lower part of the head, whereas they are, in reality, on the upper. Accordingly, when the remora fixes itself, it is obliged to turn upon its back, with its belly upward.

I am ignorant whether the two white fish that posted themselves on the arms of the sea-devil,



devil, and appeared to serve him as pilots, were also of the remora kind. But this at least I can assert, that they appeared to stick as firmly to the extremities of the arms I have mentioned, notwithstanding the arms were in continual motion. I must observe, however, that, if these white fish had a flat surface like that by which the remora adheres to other fish, it must have been on the lower part of the body, and not on the upper, since the animal continued in its natural position, and had no occasion to turn over to fix itself at its post.

It would have been highly gratifying to me, if these fish had remained at their stations, and allowed themselves to be taken with the sea-devil, as I should then have had an opportunity of examining them : but the moment the first harpoon was thrown, they let go their hold and disappeared.

I hoped, however, that we might perchance catch one of those that served as sentinels to the other two monsters, which, by all the noise we had made, had not been driven away. Different baits were tried for them, but to no purpose : when the hook was thrown into the water, they came and examined it, and immediately returned to their posts.

I do not at present recollect that any naturalist has spoken of these white remoras. Yet other travellers beside me have seen them. I shall cite on this head Dubadier, known in natural history for his rare and ample collection of the crustaceæ of the Caribbee islands. In his last voyage, this naturalist saw, in lat.  $45^{\circ}$  north, long.  $333^{\circ}$ , a similar ray, which he supposed to be about twenty-five or thirty feet in breadth, accompanied by its two white pilots. He made a drawing of it, as I did of the rays which I saw; and, on comparing these drawings, the fish evidently appear to be of the same species.

The remainder of our passage offered nothing remarkable, but the contrary winds with which we were continually buffeted: and indeed in lat.  $33^{\circ}$  we were again attacked by a violent storm. Fearing our voyage would be long and tedious, all the crew were put to short allowance of water. On the fourth of October we passed the desert islands of Flores and Corvo, and sailed within musket shot of their shores.

On the ninth of the same month one of the crew fell overboard. The waves ran so high it was impossible to save him. He was  
2 instantly

instantly carried to a considerable distance. We saw him stretch out his arms to us; but the wind hurried us on with such violence, that we could only throw some empty barrels and a few hencoops into the sea. This even could not be done with sufficient speed; and, had any of these frail supports reached him, it would only have prolonged his suffering, and given him death twenty times over.

The twenty-third of October we fell in with two small French vessels returning from the cod-fishery. We purchased of them a sufficiency for our little fleet; and it proved a very seasonable supply, for our provision was considerably diminished, and we had been badly fed for a long time. These two fishing vessels, being bound to Bayonne, would of course arrive in port before us; and I availed myself of the opportunity to inform my family, and my friends in Holland, of my near arrival.

On the thirtieth we saw several parts of a wreck, and, among the rest, a mast almost whole, which came along-side of our ship. This sad spectacle announced to us that some calamity had happened during the last storm.

At length, on the first of November, we came in sight of the coasts of Europe, and were incessantly beaten about by contrary winds, till we reached the chops of the Channel, where we were stopped, with more than two hundred other vessels, returning from all parts of the globe, and which were detained there, as well as ourselves, by contrary winds. But what was our surprise, when the Middelbourg, which we had supposed to have been lost off the Cape of Needles with all her crew, appeared among the number! In the excess of my joy, I would have taken one of the boats and gone to her: but the sea was so rough that none of the sailors would venture to row me; it was indeed tremendous. The unfortunate Middelbourg appeared to me to be in a worse condition than ourselves, and to be almost shattered to pieces. She looked, so to speak, like an invalid whom a relapse would infallibly destroy. Nobody would join me in this sad presage; yet it was the same day verified.

Scarcely had we entered the Channel, when a great mist arose. It every moment grew thicker; and the wind began to blow a storm,



which presently rose to such a height, that all the skill of our seamen was of no avail against its fury. Wave after wave drove us precipitately towards the rocks; while, on account of the mist, we could scarcely see each other, as if Heaven had intended to save us the agony of beholding twenty shipwrecks at once. We had not only the breakers to fear, but to dread also running foul of one another; for the Channel was covered with vessels. I cannot convey a better idea of the fury of the wind thus let loose upon us, than by observing that our sails, though furled, were torn to rags, and our rigging absolutely blown to tow. I considered death as inevitable, and awaited it in silence. Twenty vessels, driven by their ill fate either against each other or upon the rocks, were lost. The Middelbourg was wrecked on the shore, and the husband, wife, and children, all perished together. Another vessel of our fleet, the Holland, lost her rudder, which was broken and carried away by a wave. Become the sport of the winds and waves, and unable to steer her course, she made signals of distress, which we answered by the signals of death. To add to our misfortunes,

misfortunes, night came upon us with our rigging all in disorder. The Holland fired several more guns, and, when day appeared, nothing was to be seen of her \*. For our parts, we passed the Channel, and advanced, tempest-beaten all the way, towards the Isle of Middelbourg, where we anchored in sight of land. But the cable soon parted, as did those of all the anchors we threw out, one after another; so that we were forced to pass another terrible night, beating to windward on a coast full of shoals. Skilful as our captain was, he durst not take upon himself to enter the port without a coasting pilot. The captain of the port, Intanker, perceiving our distress from the town of Middelbourg, had the courage to venture himself in a small sloop, and came to our assistance through every danger. He got on board and took the command of the vessel, and carried her straight into the port of Flushing. We were driven in by so strong a gale, that we lay almost on our beam-ends. I was in the cabin. I heard a cry "We are all lost!" I ran upon deck.

\* I afterwards heard, that this vessel was miraculously driven into an English harbour and saved.

In fact we had struck, but by good fortune it was on the mud: had it been fifty paces lower, the vessel must have gone to pieces. She lay on her side; and in that situation we passed the night.

When day appeared, the weather was more moderate. Twenty boats came to tow us off, and get us afloat. At length we entered the road of Flushing; where, which was singular enough, we anchored along-side of the *Held Voltemaade*, the very vessel that had carried me to the Cape of Good Hope, and which the Dutch East-India Company had purchased from the English, by whom she was taken, as every one knows, on her departure from the Cape for the Isle of Ceylon. In the morning the commissioners of the company of Zealand came on board. One of them brought me letters from Amsterdam, in answer to those which I had written at sea, and sent by the fishing vessels. Temminck had recommended me to the directors of the company, who received me with every civility; and my baggage was suffered to pass untouched. The moment I set my foot on shore, I hired a small vessel, to convey myself and my effects

effects to Amsterdam without delay ; where, the moment I arrived, I hastened to throw myself into the arms of my good friends, Boers and Temminck. A few days after, I set off for Paris, where I arrived in the beginning of January 1785, after an absence of five years : the only period of my life truly to be regretted, the only one at least in which the cowardice of mankind never affected me, in which I could safely defy their injustice, their benefits, and their tyrannic sway.

END OF THE THIRD AND LAST VOLUME.















